

"SADDLE UP"

WRITTEN AND ILLUSTRATED BY
CAPTAIN F. C. HITCHCOCK, M.C.



GG Day

To Gerald with love
from Margaret. Xmas, 1935.

“SADDLE UP”

By

CAPTAIN F. C. HITCHCOCK, M.C.

SOME EARLY PRESS OPINIONS

Captain Hitchcock has written and illustrated a book . . . which will be accepted immediately as a standard authority on this subject. Even expert horsemen and horsemasters are certain to be interested in Captain Hitchcock's opinions, particularly on biting, jumping, hunting, and riding for children.—ROBIN GOODFELLOW in *The Daily Mail*.

I can see it is going to fill a long-felt want. It explains all about horses, and how to manage, buy, and ride them. It is a book I recommend with confidence.

GEOFFREY GILBEY in *The Sunday Express*.

An admirably arranged volume, . . . should meet with an immediate response from all those interested in the horse, be they man, woman or child. Captain Hitchcock set himself a difficult task when he commenced this book; but he has accomplished it manfully, and the result is a thoroughly sound, well-balanced book which will appeal to expert and beginner alike. Nor will it lose any of its charm and interest from the fact that the majority of the illustrations are drawn by the author—a decided asset in any work of technique.

WILLIAM FAWCETT in *The Field*.

During the past few years, many books on the art of riding and its intricacies have been published, and this admirable work must surely take its place with the best of them.

The author has a thorough knowledge of his subject and is able not only to write in a plain, straightforward manner, but is also able to further explain himself by excellent descriptive sketches, which the veriest novice can understand. The art of demonstration is one of the chief factors in instruction, and these sketches demonstrate the author's teachings beyond any shadow of doubt.

In addition, there are valuable and most interesting chapters on Stable Management, Saddlery, Hints on Hunting for the Novice and Riding for Children.

The beginner wishing to learn the art of riding can, with the aid of this book, teach himself; the experienced horseman will certainly add to his store of knowledge, as regards both riding and stable management, and the instructor will find much to help him in his difficult task.

A book to be bought, not borrowed.—*The Horse*.

An exhaustive and at the same time entertaining book. The volume is crammed with information.—*Sporting Life*.

I can confidently recommend "Saddle Up."

The Cavalry Journal.

A very admirable book on riding and stable-management. *Saddle Up* is a guide which must be highly recommended to all.

Horse and Hound.

It is amazing how much information of practical value has been collected and collated in this work.—*Morning Post*.

There are books galore on the subject of riding, and one of the latest and best is Capt. F. C. Hitchcock's *Saddle Up*. Here is a book . . . a highly practical work from the pen of one who knows his subject. The book is an education in equitation and horsemastership.—*Irish Field*.

Captain Hitchcock has a wealth of practical experience and conveys it to his readers clearly . . . admirably concise and helpful.—*The News Chronicle*.

Will be welcomed alike by those who would master the art of horsemanship and by instructors. There is no branch of the subject upon which Captain Hitchcock fails us.—*Guardian*.

Saddle Up is one of the most complete books about the horse we have seen for a very long time.—*Cambridge Daily News*.

A charming treatise upon the horse and its management. . . . It is a book that leaves nothing unsaid or unexplained.

Leicester Daily Mercury.

Here is a vade mecum that will very soon prove its worth in practical instruction and knowledge. It is written by an expert in the art of equitation and one, moreover, who is able to expound and explain the principles of riding and the methods of instruction in the simplest yet most original form.

West Somerset Free Press.

The author's system of learning and teaching by demonstration and imitations is fully explained by his very practical illustrations.—*The Fighting Forces*.

Most concise and well thought-out. I congratulate Captain Hitchcock on his achievement. — "SABRETACHE," *The Tatler*.

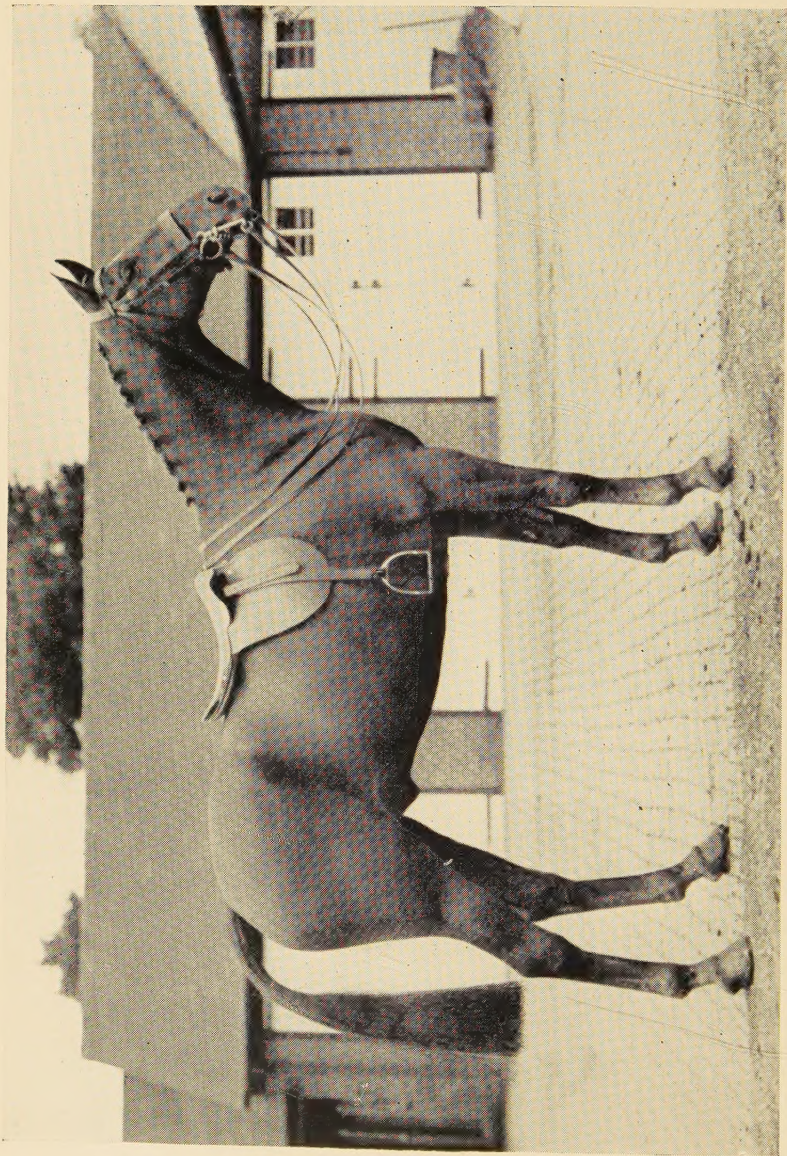
"SADDLE UP"



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

An ideal stamp of a perfectly balanced horse which shows substance and quality and embodies all the points desired in conformation. Note intelligent head, well-set-on, with a nice length of rein. The neck is set into good withers and sloping shoulders. The middle-piece is short and is well ribbed up with powerful loins and depth of girth, giving plenty of heart room. The forearm is good with a short cannon bone. The hind-quarters have strength and there is a nice length from hip to hock, the gaskins are muscular and are well let down into good clean hocks. The tail is well-set-on and carried splendidly.

This six-year-old Irish chestnut gelding by Tidal Wave, dam by Lady Dorchester, was purchased in December 1932 by the Anglo-Irish Agency on behalf of Mr. Georges Dreyfus of Switzerland, after he had won eighteen first prizes in the show rings and jumping enclosures in England and Ireland.



By courtesy of The Anglo-Irish Bloodstock Agency, Ltd., 27 Old Bond Street, London, W.1.

ENGINEER

An ideal stamp of horse

"SADDLE UP"

A GUIDE TO EQUITATION AND
STABLE MANAGEMENT, INCLUDING
HINTS TO INSTRUCTORS

Written and Illustrated by
CAPTAIN F. C. HITCHCOCK, M.C.

With a Foreword by
SIR FREDERICK HOBDAY

C.M.G., F.R.C.V.S., F.R.S.E.

WITH 120 ILLUSTRATIONS

SEVENTH IMPRESSION



*Publishers
since 1812*

LONDON
HURST & BLACKETT, LTD.

Made and Printed in Great Britain for
Hurst & Blackett, Ltd., Paternoster House, London, E.C.4, at
The Mayflower Press, Plymouth. William Brendon & Son, Ltd.

TO DOROTHY
MY INSPIRATION

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

I WISH to express my keen sense of indebtedness to the following friends who have given me much valuable advice and assistance in preparing this book for the press.

First and foremost to Sir Frederick Hobday, C.M.G., for his great kindness in writing a foreword in spite of his already very occupied time which is so devoted to the alleviation of suffering with the horse in sickness and disease and with the rebuilding of his sanctuary for animals, the Royal Veterinary College, London.

To Lieut.-Colonel P. D. Stewart, D.S.O., late 3rd Dragoon Guards, for his kindness in having given me a "leg up" in the saddle and in horse-sense from his great store of knowledge.

To Colonel O. Mosley Leigh, late Master of the Coollattin, the Island, and the Wexford Fox-hounds, for his advice on all matters appertaining to the hunting-field.

To my stable companion of war days, Captain W. D. Magill, who has rendered me such yeoman service in reading through and correcting the proofs while he was recovering from a serious steeple-chasing accident, and last, but not least, to

my brother Rex Ingram for much advice regarding my attempts to illustrate the book.

F. C. HITCHCOCK.

LEWES AND
96 PICCADILLY,
1933.

FOREWORD

By SIR FREDERICK HOBDAY, C.M.G., F.R.C.V.S.,
Hon. Dr. Med. Vet. (Zurich)

CAPTAIN HITCHCOCK has been exceedingly wise in the selection of the title for his book, for, not only is it one which is expressive and readily retained in memory but it gives exactly the impression of what follows in the text.

The book is one, which, from its originality of style and accuracy of information, will be found not only pleasant, but also instructive, reading by every horse owner, whether old and experienced, or young and full of the desire to learn. It should, and will, find a worthy place on the library table of every sportsman, and it is a book which should be purchased and given as a present, on such an occasion as a birthday, to every member of the numerous branches of the Pony Club which is now affiliated to the Institute of the Horse. No one, young or old, can possibly read the remarks of Captain Hitchcock without imbibing a spirit of enthusiasm such as few authors have the gift of imparting; and it is this spirit which is needed to be instilled into the young horse-lover of to-day.

In Chapter II on "Saddling and Bridling," the instructions are so simple and precise, and put in

such a way, that the young beginner can readily follow them. In fact for this portion alone the book is well worth buying. It is a chapter of the utmost value to the veterinary student who is preparing for his examination in Stable Management; and the plates and sketches are admirably executed. For those commencing to ride, and equally for those who can ride, the book is invaluable; certainly no veterinary student should be without it.

The chapter on "The Hands" betokens the "master hand"; and, as the author says, "to acquire good hands it is absolutely essential to have a good firm seat"; also, a little further on, "teaching by demonstration is by far the best method."

For those ladies who still prefer the side-saddle there is a very interesting chapter worthy of perusal by "grown-ups" as well as youngsters; and faults of omission, in addition to those of commission, are tactfully pointed out.

The chapter on "Care of the Horse" is palpably written by a man of practical experience. It is to such instructors that the teaching of the future horsemen should be entrusted. In this chapter Captain Hitchcock discusses the ground manger for feeding, a system which has been adopted for many years in several large stables in London and the district with excellent results, as regards both freedom from illness and saving of expense.

It is, however, when we come to Chapters XII and XIII that the advice to the novice on riding to hounds will "take hold" of the imagination of the young beginner, and if he will only read with care and follow the advice here given he will soon pass

the amateur stage and become the finished article; for even the carriage of the hunting whip and the position of the spur are described and shown in diagram.

The book closes with a Glossary of Terms, the interpretations of which, to the amateurs and members of the Pony Club, are clear and invaluable.

The illustrations, including two maps showing the situations of the hunts in England and Ireland, are most excellently sketched and reproduced, and the whole "get up" of the book reflects great credit upon the publishers as well as the author. Finally, on its own merits, it should (and will) find ready purchasers and interested readers.

Inscribed J.R. Hobday

ROYAL VETERINARY COLLEGE,
LONDON, N.W.1.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

	PAGE
THE SELECTION OF A HORSE	21
The Rider's Objective and Proficiency—Purchasing— Points of the Horse: Good and Faulty Conformation— Action—Private Purchase <i>versus</i> Sale Ring.	

CHAPTER II

SADDLING AND BRIDLING	40
How to Mount—Testing the Girths—Holding the Reins —Position of Rider and Control of the Horse—Mounting —Dismounting—Hints for Instructors.	

CHAPTER III

THE SEAT	60
The Rider's Seat—Position of Body—Position of the Legs and Feet—Influence of the Conformation of the Body— —Balance and Grip—Adjustment of the Stirrup-leathers —Hints for Instructors.	

CHAPTER IV

THE HANDS	78
Position of the Hands—Flexibility of the Wrists—Holding the Reins—Influence of the Rider's Seat and Confidence —Control and Contact with the Horse's Mouth—Holding the Reins in one Hand—The Horse's Mouth—Hints for Instructors.	

CHAPTER V

SETTING THE HORSE IN MOTION	94
Co-ordination of Hands and Legs—The Elementary Aids —The Walk—Halting—Turning the Horse—The Direct and Indirect Rein—The Trot—The Canter—The Gallop —Reining Back—Hints for Instructors.	

CHAPTER VI

THE ADVANCED AIDS	PAGE 114
-----------------------------	-------------

Distribution of the Rider's Weight—The Voice—The Artificial Aids—Cantering on a Desired Leg—Cantering True and Disunited—To Change at the Canter—The Flexions—The Passage—Circling—Controlling a Horse—Hints for Instructors.

CHAPTER VII

SIDE-SADDLE	130
-----------------------	-----

The Side-saddle Seat *versus* the Astride-seat—Influence of the Rider's Standard Astride—The Rider's Seat, Position of Body, Hands, Legs, and Feet—The Grip—The Stirrup and its Adjustment—Mounting Side-saddle—Hints for Instructors.

CHAPTER VIII

JUMPING	145
-------------------	-----

Elementary Jumping—The Mistake of Premature Jumping—The Value of Jumping—The Rider's Seat over Fences—The Three Phases in Jumping—The Action and Position of the Hands, Arms, and Legs—Hints for Instructors.

CHAPTER IX

CARE OF THE HORSE	168
-----------------------------	-----

Stable Management—Watering—Feeding, Times for Feeding, Quality and Quantity—Method of Giving Feeds, Hay-nets, and Mangers—Bedding—Grooming—Clipping and Clothing—Exercise—Care of the Feet and Shoeing—Care of the Teeth—Bandages and How to Apply Them—Stable Appliances—Stable Hands—Care of the Horse after Hunting—"Roughing Up" and Summering the Hunter.

CHAPTER X

BITTING	193
-------------------	-----

The Horse's Mouth—Selection and Fitting of Bits—Types of Bits—The Snaffle—The Double Bridle—Adjustment of the Curb-chain—The Gag-snaffle—The Kineton Nose-band—Martingales, their Uses and their Adjustment.

CHAPTER XI

	PAGE
SADDLERY	209
Selecting a Saddle—Fitting a Saddle—The Girths—Stirrup-irons and Leathers—Numnahs—Bridles—Selecting a Side-saddle—Care of Saddlery—The Saddle-room and its Fittings.	

CHAPTER XII

HUNTING	220
First Hunting Days—The Horse—Rider's Turn-out and Tack—Hunting-field Etiquette—Care and Thought for the Horse throughout the Day's Hunting and on Return to Stables—Rider's Turn-out for Rotten Row and Hacking generally—The Institute of the Horse.	

CHAPTER XIII

RIDING FOR CHILDREN	242
The Selection of a Child's Pony and its Management—Saddles and Bridles—Riding Lessons—Children's Turn-out for Hacking and Hunting—The Pony Club and its Advantages.	

APPENDICES

A. GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN STABLE MANAGEMENT AND IN EQUITATION	257
B. COLOURS, MARKINGS, SEX, AND AGE	269
C. GLOSSARY OF HUNTING TERMS USED IN FOX AND STAG-HUNTING	272
D. THE HUNTING SEASONS: FOX- CUB- AND STAG-HUNTING	278
E. SOME HINTS FOR HORSEMEN	279
F. MAP SHOWING THE FOX-HUNTS OF ENGLAND, WALES AND SOUTHERN SCOTLAND	283
G. MAP SHOWING THE HUNTING DISTRICTS IN IRELAND	284
H. LIST OF HUNTS IN GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND, WITH KENNELS	285
INDEX	289

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

ENGINEER	<i>Frontispiece</i>
A PERFECTLY BALANCED HORSE IN ACTION	FACING PAGE 48
COLONEL RODZANKO AT THE METROPOLITAN MOUNTED POLICE HORSE SHOW, IMBER COURT	80
NEGOTIATING A DROP FENCE AT THE EQUITATION SCHOOL, WEEDON	112
JUMPING BECHER'S BROOK IN THE GRAND NATIONAL, 1924	152
FOLLOWERS OF THE PYTCHLEY MOVING OFF TO COVERT SIDE AFTER THE MEET AT SWINFORD LAST SEASON	184
MEET OF THE FERNIE AT TUR LANGTON, NEAR MARKET HARBOROUGH, NOVEMBER 1932	216
A NINE-YEAR-OLD PUPIL CLEARING THE TRIPLE BAR IN CAPITAL STYLE	248

DIAGRAMS IN THE TEXT

POINTS OF THE HORSE	PAGE 26
GOOD AND FAULTY CONFORMATION	27-37
SADDLING AND BRIDLING	41-58
THE SEAT	62-76
POSITION OF THE HANDS AND HOW TO HOLD THE REINS	79-92
THE HORSE IN MOTION	95-106
THE ADVANCED AIDS	120-125
SIDE-SADDLE	138-143
JUMPING	149-164
CARE OF THE HORSE	180-189
BITTING	195-207
HUNTING	231-233

	PAGE
RIDING FOR CHILDREN	245-255
BODY BRUSH	258
ADJUSTING A YORKSHIRE BOOT	258
SHOE OF A DRAUGHT HORSE WITH CALKINS	259
A CRADLE	260
CURRY-COMB	261
DANDY BRUSH	261
THE GALVAYNE GROOVE AND TUSHES	262
HEAD-STALL	263
HOOF-PICK	263
A POINT	275
HOW TO ATTACH A LEADING-REIN TO LEAD ON THE NEAR AND OFF SIDES	280
CUTTING BARBED WIRE AND WHERE TO CUT IT	281
MAP SHOWING THE FOX-HUNTS OF ENGLAND, WALES AND SOUTHERN SCOTLAND	283
MAP SHOWING THE FOX-HUNTS OF IRELAND	284

"SADDLE UP"

CHAPTER I

THE SELECTION OF A HORSE

THE RIDER'S OBJECTIVE AND PROFICIENCY.

IN choosing a horse there are three cardinal facts which should be carefully borne in mind before one launches hastily into a deal which undoubtedly will cause disappointment and in all probability financial loss should they not have been treated with due consideration, viz. :

- I. The Rider's Objective.
- II. The Rider's Proficiency.
- III. The Rider's Weight.

Now we will presume that the rider who is a novice desires to hunt, and without doubt hunting is the ambition, and the hunting-field the objective of the vast majority of beginners. For the first season with hounds it is essential that one should get a made hunter, that is to say a horse that has been hunted and that knows his job, is tractable with hounds, can jump and stay, and is a safe easy ride. To fulfil his *rôle* it is necessary that the horse should be sound of wind, limb and eye.

It is a truism to state that all horses are affected by the presence of hounds ; in fact it would appear that every member of the noble equine race was foaled into the world with an instinctive desire to be with hounds, and this is a point to be considered carefully when one is in any way doubtful as to the tranquillity and temperament of the horse one is proposing to purchase.

If a horse is in any way inclined to “get hot” or “take hold” when out hacking or in the company of other horses, assuredly these inclinations will be doubly manifest in the hunting-field. One will not be considered plucky for attempting to ride a horse out hunting which becomes unmanageable, or a horse that is beyond the individual rider’s standard of horsemanship. Rather, on the contrary, one will be dubbed an unmitigated idiot for the utter stupidity of riding a horse which is obviously beyond one’s capability of keeping under control, and thereby and deservedly invoke the wrath and indignation of the Master, the Field Master, and every member of the Hunt, for perhaps committing one of the following heinous offences—(1) barging into crowded gateways, (2) careering into hounds or overriding them, (3) not taking one’s turn at a gap or “cutting in” at a fence, through inability to control the horse.

The rider’s objective and the standard of his equitation having been considered, we will next deal with his weight. The horse must be up to the rider’s weight, and what we mean by weight is the individual’s weight in complete riding kit, plus the weight of the saddle. Every pound tells during a day’s run, and the novice’s pound will

always weigh heavier than the skilled horseman's as he will naturally not have the faculty of riding with the judgment of the expert. Moreover, he does not possess that instinct which becomes almost second nature to tell one when to nurse one's horse and not to press him, and to take those opportunities which invariably come one's way for a breather, or a short cut to save the horse unnecessary galloping ; or again, of avoiding those places where the going is heavy during a run. Riding with one's head and the necessary eye for country are faculties which can be attained only by practical experience. Again, the novice will not ride with that easy rhythm and suppleness of body which denote perfect balance and unison, which mean so much to the horse.

Likewise, heavy hands which are so characteristic of the novice and constant jobbing at the horse's mouth which invariably occurs when a beginner is negotiating an obstacle, are faults which must react on any horse's stamina throughout a day's hunting.

PURCHASING.

With these three facts ingrained in our mind, we can approach a reputable dealer or dealers, and comb out their respective stables for a likely sort, remembering that the more weight a horse is up to, and the more quality he possesses, the wider the dealer will open his mouth.

We will assume that we ride moderately light, and therefore can at once eliminate the heavy-weight hunter type from our mind.

We have decided that we want a horse up to

13 stone, which is a good hunter, meaning that the animal is sound in wind, limb, and eyes, and has been hunted and is capable of being hunted ; therefore can jump and is quiet with hounds. If a horse answers all these requirements and has quality, and is a six or seven-year-old, his purchasing figure will without doubt be beyond one's means. Moreover, in view of the fact that it is one's first season with hounds, when one is out to learn the rudiments of the chase and the etiquette of the hunting-field, it is advisable to get an older horse which has had three or four seasons' experience with hounds.

There can be no better mode of embarking on one's hunting career than on the back of a proved veteran for the initial season ; which, incidentally, will mean a more reasonable price.

We will consider a nine or ten-year-old horse, standing about 15.2 to 16 hands, and without demanding he should be a thoroughbred, one should avoid buying a common horse. He should in conformation be what is known as a compact horse, i.e. good symmetry, head well set on, short legs, well-coupled body and hocks well under him ; also he should be of a good colour. Avoid washy or liver-coloured chestnuts and black horses. The former are often to be associated with headstrong dispositions, and the latter are not infrequently “nappy,” bad doers, and tempersome. The bay horse with black points (when the lower part of the legs from the knees and hocks downwards are black the bay-coloured horse is said to have “black points”), the brown horse, the deep chestnut, and the grey (though some greys are sluggish) are all good colours.

POINTS OF THE HORSE, GOOD AND FAULTY CONFORMATION. (Diagram 1 (A) and (B).)

Now if we were to judge a horse by only one point, experts stipulate that we should judge by the head.

So we will commence on the head, and then deal in order with the other parts in our appreciation of the points in make and shape which comprise the hunter of perfect conformation, and endeavour to find something after the equivalent of this model.

The head can be given priority of consideration, as it is the one part from which we may be able to ascertain the horse's disposition and character.

A horse should not have a big, ugly head, as this indicates commonness, and he will always carry it badly. We would like a horse with a nice lean head, a broad flat forehead, and large open nostrils. A small or "pig" eye should be avoided; such an eye indicates an ungenerous disposition, sullenness, and a wayward temper.

A good bold eye is a sign of intelligence and good disposition, and a courageous horse. Too big or prominent an eye on the other hand, is often a sign of a horse with a nervous temperament, or one which is "scarey," and a bad "doer."

The ears are also pointers as to the horse's disposition, those that lie flat back continually denoting vice, as likewise those which are set too closely together in the head. Ears which move steadily but not too often, and are carried upright and pricked, are the best. "Lop ears" which flop down on either side are very ugly, but they should

POINTS OF THE HORSE

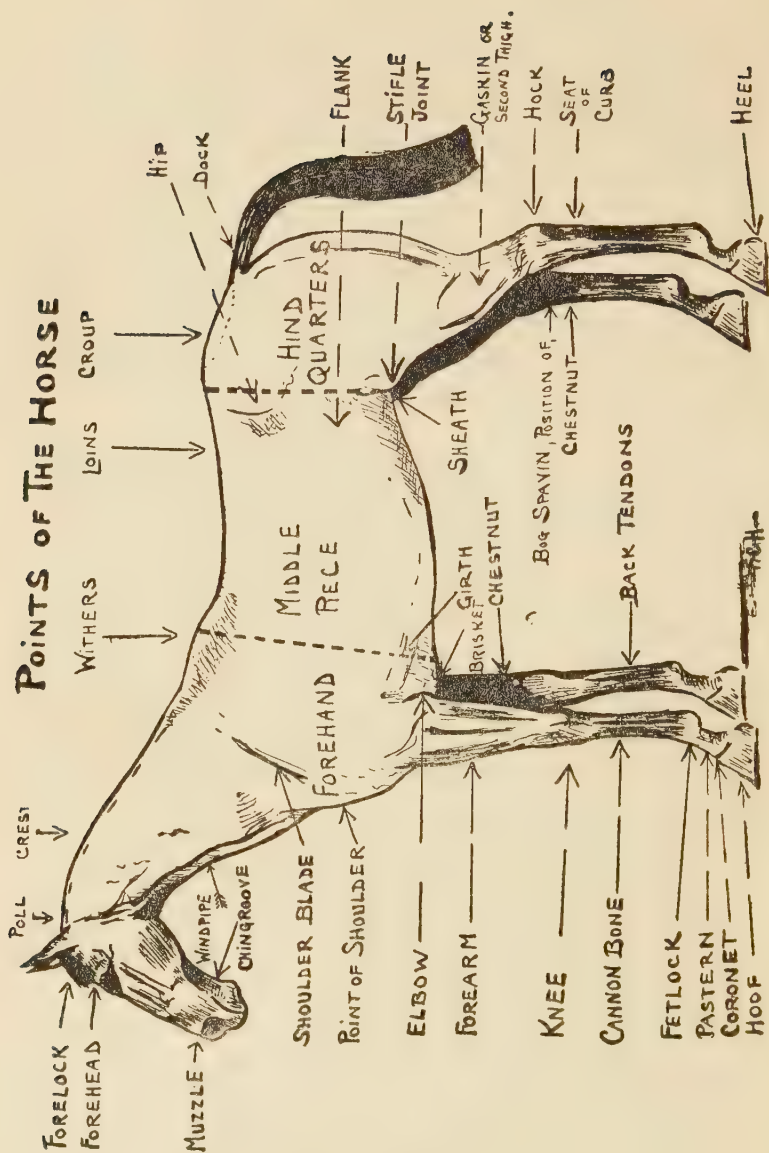


Diagram 1 (A).

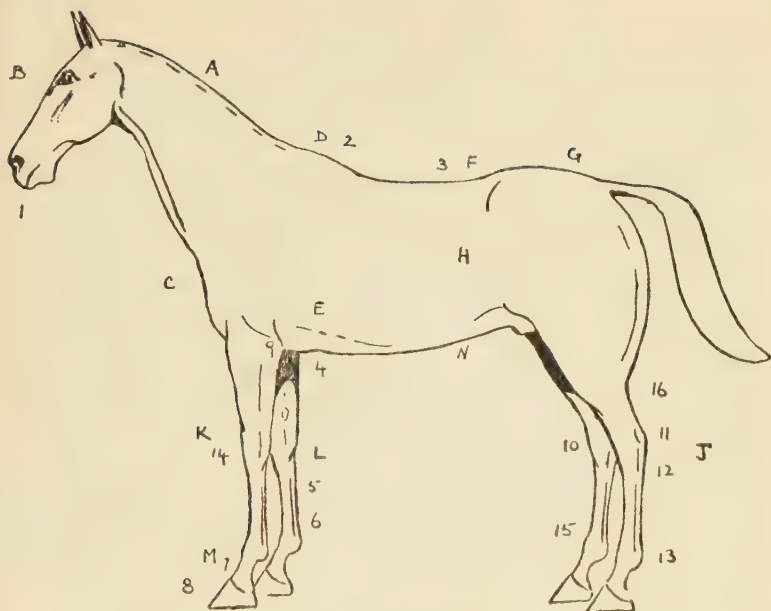


Diagram 1 (B).

COMMON AILMENTS
(In numerical order.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. The Mouth { Lampas.
Bad or uneven Teeth or Grinders. | 9. Capped Elbow. |
| 2 and 3. Saddle Galls. | 10. Bog or Bone Spavin and Thorough-pin. |
| 4. Girth Galls. | 11. Capped Hock. |
| 5. Splint (inside Shin or Cannon-bone). | 12. Curb. |
| 6. Sprain of Suspensory Ligament and Back Tendons. | 13. Brushing (inside of Fetlock). |
| 7. Ring-bone. | 14. Broken Knees. |
| 8. The Feet { Cracked Heels.
Sand-crack.
Navicular.
Thrush.
Corns.
Laminitis. | 15. Wind Galls. |
| | 16. String Halt. |

WHERE THE SEATS OF FAULTY CONFORMATION WOULD BE
(In alphabetical order.)

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| A. Ewe Neck. | J. { Sickle-hocks.
Cow-hocks.
Curby-hocks.
Hocks too straight. |
| B. Pig Eye (Small Eye). | K. Legs too straight in front or standing over. Standing too wide or too close. |
| C. Straight Shoulder. | Lam-legged or Knock-kneed. |
| D. Low Withers. | L. Tied in below the Knee. |
| E. No Depth of Girth. | M. Too long in Pastern or too short. |
| F. Weak Loins. | N. Herring-gutted. |
| G. Goose Rumped. | |
| H. Short of Back Ribs. | |

not be considered detrimental as many good horses, and particularly jumpers, will be found with this formation of the ears.

A horse which shows the white of his eye in looking backwards, may be expected to have a bad temper. Well-bred horses invariably have good heads, and show their quality in this respect, and also in the way in which they carry their heads. Particular importance should be attached to the manner in which the head is set on the body through the medium of the neck. The neck which sticks out of the shoulders like the shaft of a cart should be avoided, as with such a neck formation the horse can never be balanced, and therefore will be an uncomfortable ride, and “down on the hands.”

Again, an uneven distribution of weight on the forehead (a horse's head and neck are important factors in balance, as he can by their position shift the centre of gravity forward or backward) will cause too much weight on the forelegs, which will be a strain on the tendons and ligaments.

Again, a “ewe-necked” horse (i.e. one in whom the curve of the crest is concave instead of convex—see Diagram 2),—although this malformation can be assisted and improved by the use of a standing martingale and judicious biting, it is often an uncomfortable ride, and a ewe-neck often runs in conjunction with “star-gazing,” which, besides being an unpleasant habit for riding, is also dangerous, as the carriage of the head prevents the horse from seeing where he is stepping.

The acme of correct conformation is a well-shaped neck, nicely crested, let into good sloping

shoulders, which will give a nice long "rein." The withers should be reasonably high, and on the lean side, sloping gradually away into the back. Low withers and narrow shoulders are bad faults for any kind of saddle-horse.

It is essential to have a "lot in front of the saddle," and any horse which has a mule-like conformation in the withers and shoulders should be avoided, as he will never be a comfortable ride, and the saddle will be continually slipping forward.

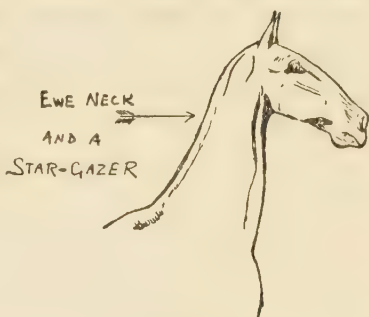


Diagram 2.

The Trunk, or Middle Piece, to give the term more commonly used to define all that part of a horse's anatomy which is included between two vertical lines drawn from the termination of the withers to the elbow, and from the hip to the stifle (see Diagram 1 A), should be short, muscular, and strong. The horse should be "well ribbed up," i.e. with his ribs well rounded or hooped, with a minimum amount of space between the last rib and hip and with a good depth of girth. These points in conformation mean that there is plenty of room for the heart and lungs to function, which are indications of wind and the ability to "stay."

In contrast, horses which are flat-sided, slack-loined, or like a greyhound, are called "herring gutted," and will be found deficient in stamina and the powers of endurance. Therefore, the straighter and more parallel the lower line of the

middle piece, i.e. from the elbow to the stifle, is with the ground, the better.

Avoid the greyhound type, which always denotes the “weed.” The back should be short, muscular, and strong, and the loins should be broad and also muscular.

A horse should not be hollow in the back. In contrast, a horse with a roached back, i.e. one with a prominent spinal cord, should be regarded warily, as this denotes narrow loins and weak hind-quarters. Furthermore, a “roached back” is very susceptible to sore backs, as the spine is more exposed to any friction from the saddle.

Good hind-quarters are essential, and they should be well developed, muscular, and broad, in order to fulfil their rôle as a propelling force to the body. The quarters should be well let down, with plenty of length from the hip to the hock. Drooping or sloping hind-quarters, though detracting from appearance, are often the indication of ability to jump, and a horse whose conformation is such is described as being “goose rumped.” A “goose rump” will be found often in conjunction with a prominence of the top bone of the quarters, which is known as the “jumper’s bump.” This somewhat ugly conformation is regarded with particular appreciation in Ireland.

For appearance, the tail should be set on high and carried well. The way or mannner in which the Arab carries the tail is a very decorative and a characteristic feature of this breed. It is a rarity to find a good horse with a bad tail carriage.

Fore and Hind Legs. It is most important that a horse should have good strong legs, and they

should be in proportion to the rest of the body for his conformation to be symmetrical. Being leggy, or too much "on the leg" denotes a "weed." The forelegs, it should be remembered, have chiefly to support the weight and the hind-legs to propel the body. The forearm should be muscular and have length, and the cannon or shin-bone should be short, and should not decrease in width close to the



Diagram 3.
STANDING OVER AT
THE KNEES



Diagram 4.
"CALF-KNEED"



Diagram 5.
SICKLE-HOCKED

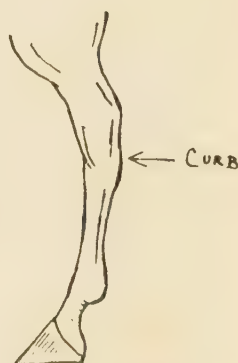


Diagram 6.
CURBY-HOCKED

knees, otherwise the horse will be "tied in below the knees," which is a bad fault. The pastern should be strong, and not short, longish pasterns denote breeding and elasticity of movement, which make for a comfortable ride. The horse should stand well, i.e. neither be "over at the knees" nor in contrast be "calf-kneed" (see Diagrams 3 and 4). Of the two faults the former is the more preferable, and several famous race-horses, including the great Bayardo and the gallant Brown Jack, "stood and stand over at the knees."

Stand in front of the horse and see that he is not standing wide, i.e. with his forelegs too far apart. No horse which goes wide in front is speedy, and horses with this fault are invariably found to be stumblers. Likewise, standing too close indicates that the horse is narrow-chested, and probably “brushes,” which is a constant source of trouble, causing lameness, or demanding special shoeing.

In the hind-legs, it is a great asset to find strong, muscular gaskins or second thighs, with plenty of width. The hocks should be strong and clean, and they should be well under the horse. They should not be too straight, or bent at too much of an angle. This is known as being “sickle-hocked,” and is a sign of weakness (see Diagram 5). Likewise, curby hocks should be avoided, and the presence of curbs is easily detected by standing square to a horse’s hind-leg (see Diagram 6). Viewed from the rear the horse’s hind-quarters should have width and muscle between the thighs, and should not be what is known as “split up.”

The points of the hocks should be straight and must not be inclined towards each other, which malformation is known as being “cow-hocked” (see Diagrams 7 and 8). The test for a horse standing correctly with his hind-legs is that the vertical line drawn from the point of the buttock should touch the point of the hock and the fetlock (see Diagram 9).

It is particularly important that the legs should be clean, i.e. smooth to touch all down the cannon-bone

Hunters will be found with old blemishes from knocks at jumps, and splints are very common.

However, if the horse has a splint, be careful to see that it is not high up, or too far back, so as to interfere with the functions of the knee-joint, or again, to interfere with and press on a tendon. Splints in such positions invariably cause lameness (see Diagram 10).

The tendons should be felt carefully, and



Diagram 7.
COW-HOCKS



Diagram 8.
STANDING WELL



Diagram 9.
STANDING WELL

suspicion to tendon trouble considered fully. Beware of what may only appear to be a "filled leg" or puffy legs. Tendon trouble is always a source of danger, and anything appertaining to such, e.g. a sprain of the tendon which may later develop into a "bowed tendon," or any trouble suspected with the suspensory ligament, should be regarded very seriously (see Diagram 11). In feeling the legs one should be ready to detect the presence

of heat in either one or both legs, and, likewise, one should feel the feet for the same reason. Where there is heat, there must be trouble of some kind.

Long sloping pasterns are a good feature, and besides denoting breeding, make for a pleasant

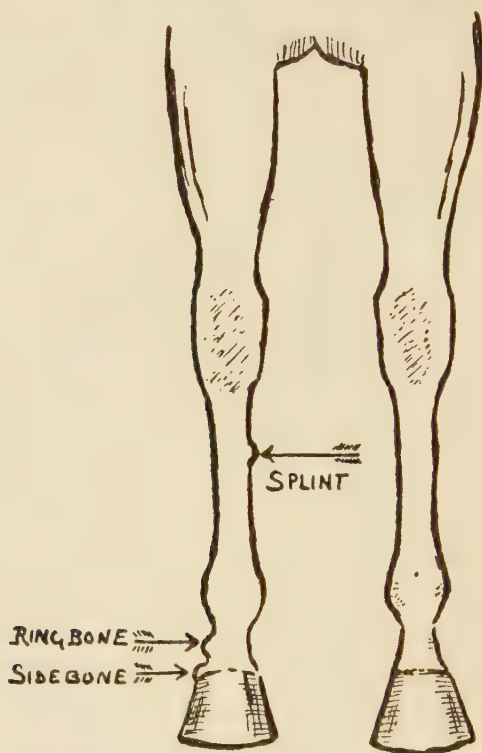


Diagram 10.

AN UNSOUND OFF FORELEG

A CLEAN NEAR FORELEG

springy action. The pastern acts as a shock-absorber when landing over a jump, and should it be on the short side, there will be more concussion to both horse and rider. However, it should be stated that too long pasterns are as faulty as short and upright ones.

The horse should stand on well-shaped healthy feet. Sufficient importance is rarely attached to the feet and their structure; the old saying, "No foot, no horse," should be borne in mind.

The outer wall of the hoof should be hard, and devoid of any ridges and it should be in proportion to the size of the horse; too small a foot is equally as undesirable as a large and unduly spread foot. Note whether the forefeet are a "pair," i.e. if one



Diagram 11.

CLEAN LEG BOWED TENDON

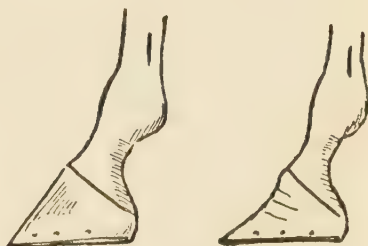


Diagram 12.

SOUND FOOT UNSOUND FOOT
(Note concave appearance of unsound foot.)

foot appears slightly smaller than the other, suspect navicular disease. Beware of a horse which "points" a foreleg, i.e. having one leg unnaturally advanced when in the standing position. It is an indication of something being wrong either from lameness or possibly faulty shoeing.

Regarded from a flank, the wall of the hoof should be on a straight slope; on no account should it have a tendency to be concave, which suggests navicular trouble or laminitis (see Diagram 12).

Again, there should not be any vertical crevice or crack down the wall from the coronet, as this means sand-crack (Diagram 13).



Diagram 13.
SAND-CRACK

When lifted up the frog should appear healthy, and well-developed ; not shrivelled up or contracted, and it must be free from any unpleasant odour which usually indicates the presence of Thrush (see Diagram 14 for position of other ailments).

ACTION.

First have the horse shown in hand at the walk, and then at the trot, on a hard surface. A good striding walk is a great asset, and a horse which walks well with free movement is invariably a good horse. When trotting, the horse should have a nice springy action. At the walk and trot, the marks of the hind-feet should overreach the marks of the forefeet. Stand in front of the horse so as to watch him trotting forward, and behind him to watch him trotting away. In this position it will be easier to see if he is "favouring a leg," i.e. lame ; and one can also see if he "dishes," which means throwing out the forelegs from the knee-joints, or again "brushes" behind. Remember that good conformation makes for good action, and that good action carries weight.

PRIVATE PURCHASE *versus* SALE RING.

Having found the right sort, and decided that the price is within our means, the would-be purchaser should try the horse himself two or three times if possible, before rushing headlong into a bargain, and most good dealers will be only

too ready to accommodate a would-be purchaser whom they know is genuinely out to buy. These trial rides are invaluable, and one can soon see if

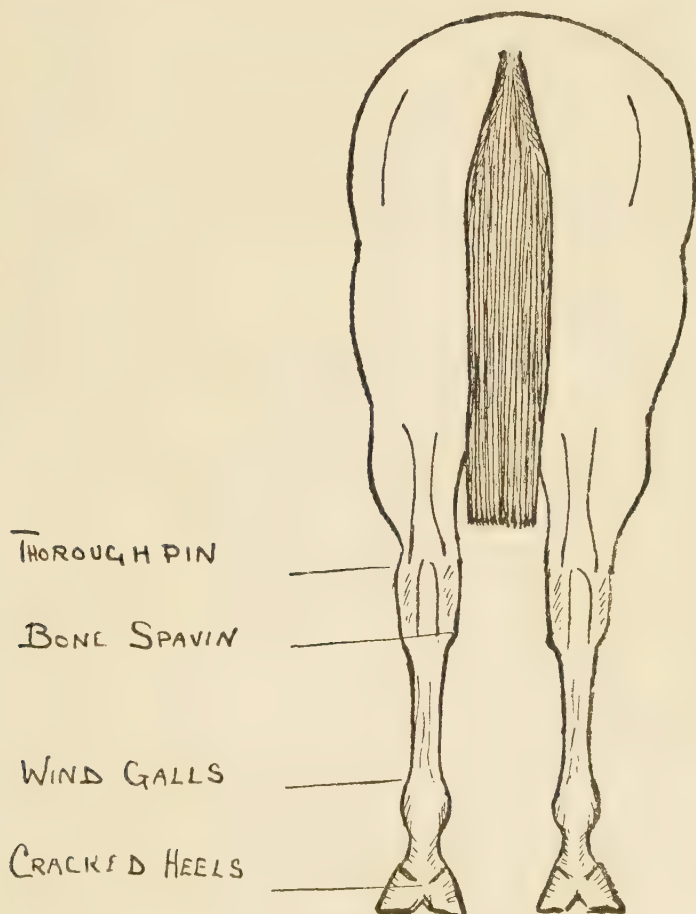


Diagram 14.

the horse is suitable and a nice ride, or if he has got some vice hitherto concealed. It is advisable that he should be quiet in traffic. A horse, too, which shies is an inveterate nuisance. If it is possible to have

a hunt on the horse, so much the better, and most dealers will let the horse out on hire to an intending purchaser, though it is doubtful if they will do so to a novice or to one whose standard of horsemanship is an unknown quantity.

Out hunting, or preferably cub-hunting for the novice's initial experiment with a horse, one can quickly realise the good or bad qualities of a horse, and, moreover, from this initial hunt, the rider will know if the horse is quiet with hounds, and possesses those essential qualities of the hunter that he is reputed to have.

Should the horse give satisfaction and fulfil all the necessary requirements, the intending purchaser should have the horse examined by a competent veterinary surgeon, who will give a certificate as to his soundness in wind, limb, and eyesight, or otherwise, before the deal is finally closed.

This method of private purchase is much to be preferred to the Sale Ring, where no trial can be had, and where one has to take one's chance as to the manners and temperament of the horse, although a veterinary certificate is usually to be obtained for perusal at the sale to warrant soundness. In the description of a hunter in a sale catalogue, his hunting performances, together with the name of the pack of hounds, should be noted. The latter is not the least insignificant as he may have hunted with a very moderate pack, whereas if he is said to be "a good hunter and jumper," and hails from "a good country," and is being sold for some very genuine reason, such as his owner going abroad, he is probably all that he is claimed to be.

There is, however, this great feature in purchasing through the Sale Ring, and that is that often very good bargains can be had, owing to the attendance being poor or the bidding low. Sometimes very useful horses can be picked up for a mere song in the Sale Ring. However, for the novice this method is not advocated.

It is imperative that the novice should always have a trial of the horse he proposes purchasing, otherwise he may find himself landed with a "nappy" horse, or one which he is unable to manage or control.

Remember the golden rule when looking at a horse with a view to purchase is to look for his faults, and not allow oneself to be influenced by his good looks or attractive appearance. An elegant head will be no recompense for a bowed tendon; so it is advisable to keep one's eyes on the ground in order to detect any sign of unsoundness or fault in conformation and action.

CHAPTER II

SADDLING AND BRIDLING

SADDLING AND BRIDLING.

EVERY aspirant to horsemanship should learn at the very outset of his riding career the correct method of saddling and bridling a horse.

It is quite amazing the number of people who go out hacking daily who are completely ignorant about this very essential business.

The main causes for this state are due to :

- I. Lack of interest on the rider's part.
- II. Slackness on the part of the instructor to demonstrate the correct method and to make the pupil practise saddling up during the first lessons.
- III. Lack of opportunity to practise, and the presence of a punctilious groom who always has the horse awaiting the rider well in advance of the scheduled time for the ride.

However, there may come a day when owing to the unavoidable absence of the groom the ride has to be postponed or abandoned because the novice has never mastered the intricacies of the bridle, reins, saddle, and girths.

There are many so-called riders who have never

been initiated into the rudiments of saddling up, and to them a saddle and bridle hanging so ordinarily in the saddle-room are like a veritable Chinese puzzle, and the very idea of putting them on presents an insurmountable problem.

Here are the simple rules which should be followed in saddling and bridling, and which should be practised by the novice in the very initial days.

First of all it is necessary to see that the "tack," i.e. saddle and bridle, are all complete in the saddle-room before going to the stable. (The rider should know the actual "tack" which belongs to the horse he intends to ride.)



Diagram 1 (A).
A BIT AND BRIDOOON KNOWN AS
A DOUBLE BRIDLE

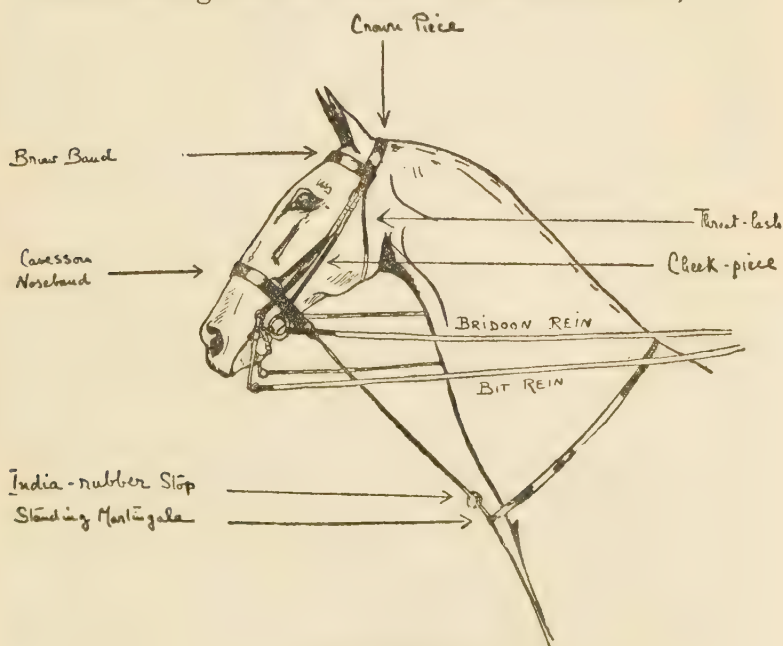


Diagram 1 (B).

Before removing the saddle from the saddle-stand see that the stirrup-irons are run up the top of the leathers in order to prevent them dangling and getting caught under the saddle-flap when putting the saddle on the horse's back, also turn up the girths and bring them across the seat of the saddle.

Now take down the bridle and look it over, seeing that the throat lash is open, likewise the nose-band, and should it be a double bridle or a Pelham, see that the curb-chain is there and that it is unfastened on the near side. If the horse goes in a running martingale take it down from its peg and with the saddle over the left forearm (the front arch nearest the elbow joint) and the bridle being held at the crown-piece in the right hand together with the reins and martingale, proceed to the stable.



Diagram 2.

Should the horse be in a stall and not a loose box the head-collar will have to be removed.

Next place the neck-strap of the martingale over the horse's head and slide it down his neck, followed by the reins which should rest just over his crest (the reins thus over the horse's head will always ensure control; for should the horse get restive they can be grasped tightly under his windpipe).

Holding the crown-piece in the right hand slide it up the horse's face and gently press the bit with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand against

the horse's teeth : when he has opened his mouth and received the bit, slip the crown-piece over his poll.

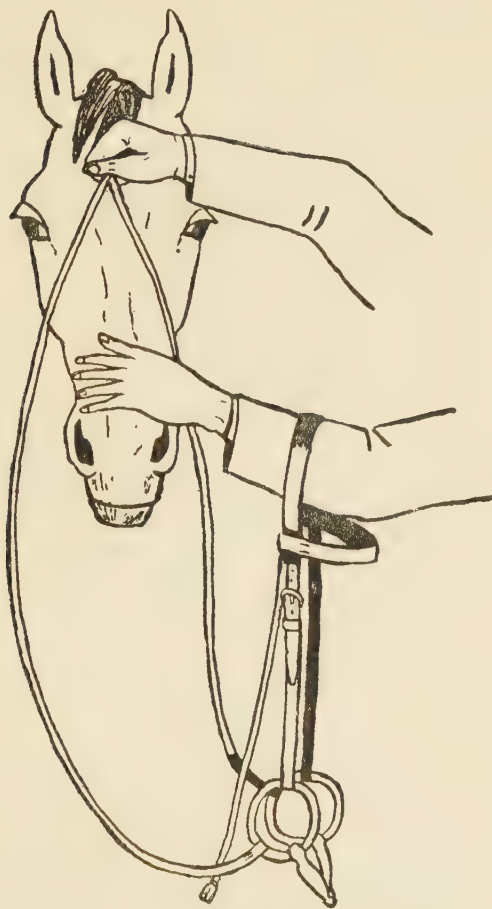


Diagram 3.

PUTTING ON A BRIDLE—THE PRELIMINARY STAGE

Note the reins being put over the horse's head first, also position of bridle hanging on the arm to facilitate it being put on correctly. Note also that a snaffle bridle is being used in this sketch.

Now pull the ears gently and one at a time between the brow-band and the crown-piece. Should the horse be restive at the commencement

and refuse to put his head down, grasp hold of his right ear with the right hand, and place the left hand

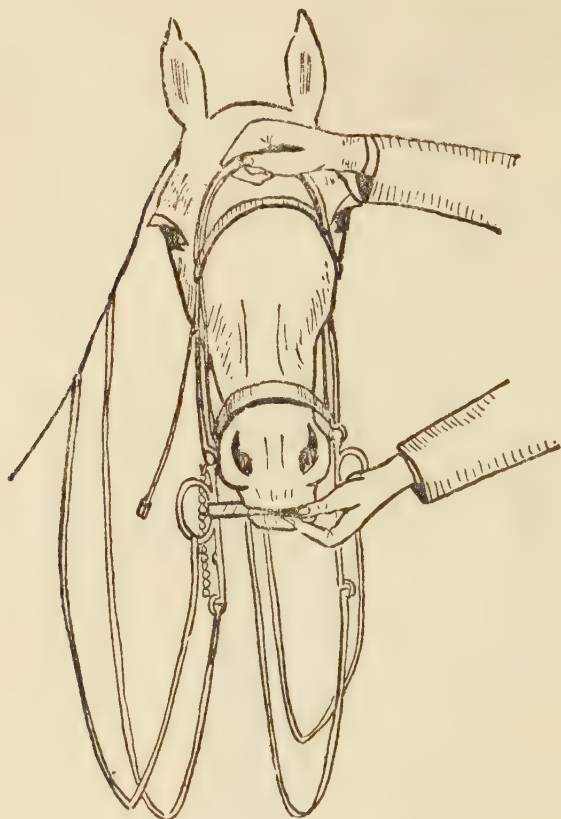


Diagram 4.

This diagram illustrates the ordinary method of gently pressing the bit against the horse's teeth to make him open his mouth to receive the bit with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand.

Should difficulty be experienced in making the horse open his mouth to receive the bit, insert the thumb of the left hand at the corner of his mouth. This will always have the desired effect of making the horse open his mouth and the mouthpiece of the bit can be slipped in.

across his muzzle, and draw his head down. When he has steadied, slip the left hand between the bridle and replace it back on his muzzle, drawing

the bridle up towards his poll with the right hand ; on the bit coming in contact with his lips, remove the left hand from the muzzle, and guide the bit into his mouth.

Now stand in front of the horse's head and pull the cheek pieces even so that the bit will not be higher at one side than the other.

Next buckle up the throat lash, which should admit



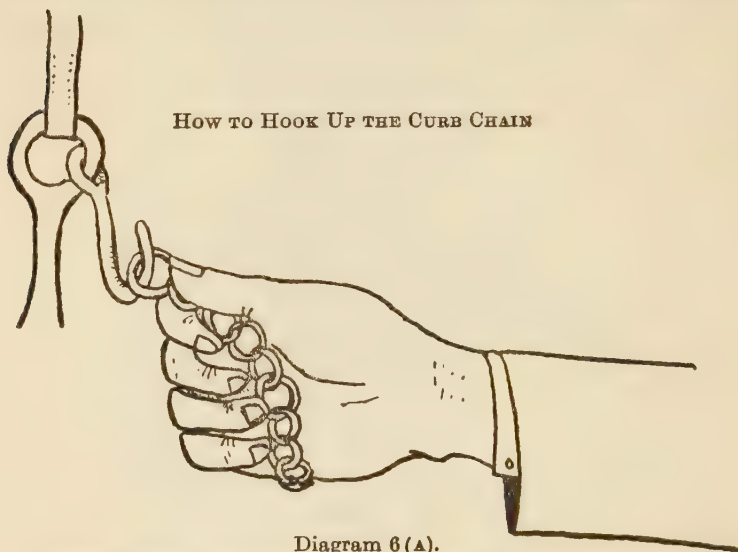
Diagram 5.

Method of holding a horse or steadying a restive horse without a bridle.

room for two finger-breadths between it and the horse's jawbone, i.e. just tight enough to prevent the bridle slipping over the horse's ears. The nose-band should now be fastened, and when properly adjusted should admit two fingers between it and the nose.

Be careful to have it at least two finger-breadths below the cheek-bones, otherwise it may chafe them, especially if the bridle is new and the leather hard. Great care should be taken in hooking up the curb-chain, being loose and unravelled it will first

have to be twisted up until all the links are perfectly flat so that when the curb-chain is in position it will lie evenly in the chin-groove. Remember to always hook up the last link first and then fasten the link which you have decided will give the correct length for the curb: this will prevent the possibility of spare links dangling about.



HOW TO HOOK UP THE CURB CHAIN

Diagram 6 (A).

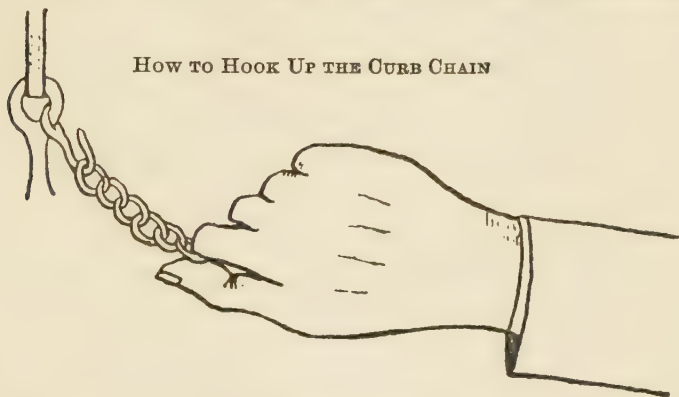
The curb chain is attached to the off side of the bit and is hanging loose and unravell'd. Take the end link of the loose end between your finger and thumb and twist it up like a corkscrew; next hook on the very last link first on the near side of the bit keeping the thumb nail up.

Now put the saddle on the horse's back, placing it high up on the withers and slipping it gradually back into position. (Never place it too far back and push it forward as this will be going against the horse's coat.)

Go round to the horse's off side and take down the girths which have been lying across the saddle, and see that the flap or panel is not rucked or turned up underneath. Next with the left hand draw the loop of the martingale between the horse's

forelegs and run the girths through the loop with the right hand so that the rear girth (the one nearer the horse's tail) overlaps the front girth.

Now return to the near side and take up the girths as follows—first the front girth, i.e. the one nearest the horse's head and then take up the second girth which should overlap the first. Girths should be tightened gradually and not with violence; see that the skin is not being wrinkled in the proceeding,



HOW TO HOOK UP THE CURB CHAIN

Diagram 6 (B).

Now take the link which you have decided gives the correct length for the curb chain between your finger and thumb and turn your hand round so that the back of your hand is opposite your mouth and your thumb nail is down. This method will insure that the curb chain will not become unravelled in the process of hooking up to the selected link.

and that the loop of the martingale is in the centre of the girths underneath the horse.

At this stage, however, the girths must not be tightened to the correct degree.

The last act is to unbuckle the bit-reins at their extremity and insert both ends through the respective rings on the running martingale and rebuckle the reins. In doing this take care to hold the rings up as if they were in the correct position when you insert the reins, otherwise the martingale will be twisted.

The horse is now properly saddled and bridled, and ready for use with the exception of the final tightening of the girths.

N.B.—In order to cover all the possible ground in explaining the method of bridling a bit has been used with a running martingale. With a snaffle bridle and without the martingale the procedure would be much simplified.

HOW TO MOUNT.

It is most essential that from the commencement the novice should learn how to mount correctly and throughout all the elementary lessons a certain amount of time should be devoted to mounting and dismounting.

At first the instructor should stand at the horse's head and hold the reins in order to give the pupil confidence. However, the sooner the pupil learns to mount independently the better. Moreover, practising mounting and dismounting is good exercise for the novice, making him supple and agile, and further it tends to get him accustomed to the horse and handling the horse.

The novice will find that the more he perfects himself in mounting the less effort will be required in getting into the saddle.

First and foremost get into the habit of approaching the horse by his head, and do not short circuit round his hind-quarters, which is the general tendency with beginners. Secondly, always test the girths before mounting. If the girths are slack the saddle may slip round when mounting, further a horse may develop a sore back by the friction of an insecure saddle wobbling about.



Photo by Walden Hammond

A PERFECTLY BALANCED HORSE IN ACTION

CORPUS-COLONEL W. B. STEWART, U.S.A., ON HIS FAVORITE MUSTER "MULHOLLAND"

The girths when properly tightened should admit of two fingers being inserted under them.

When tightening girths take great care that the under girth is always the first to be tightened in order to avoid a ruck which may be caused by erroneously tightening the top girth first and which is liable to cause a girth gall. (The under girth is always the first girth to be tightened, i.e. the one nearest to the horse's head.)

The necessity for stressing the subject of girth tightening cannot be sufficiently impressed, and there are two reasons for accounting for the possibility of loose girths.

When horses are being girthed up in the stable they have a habit of invariably "blowing themselves out" to resist the girths being tightened and after an interval, particularly after the horse has been walked about in the stable-yard preparatory to mounting, it will have relaxed and the girths will be found to be slack. Again, if horses have been saddled up for some little time in advance before they are required grooms naturally do not make the girths taut, but leave them easy, intending to tighten them afterwards, which they may forget to do.

Therefore, from the commencement the pupil must be imbued with the rule of girth testing which will afterwards become an instinctive action on his part prior to mounting.

Having tested the girths to see that they are secure, the pupil takes up his position at right-angles to the horse's near shoulder facing towards the animal's tail.

HOLDING THE REINS.

The next step in the procedure is the taking up of all four reins which should be gathered up with the left hand just before the front arch of the saddle (where the horse's mane ceases to grow, or where it would have ceased had the mane not been hogged).

To facilitate the adjustment of the reins, and to

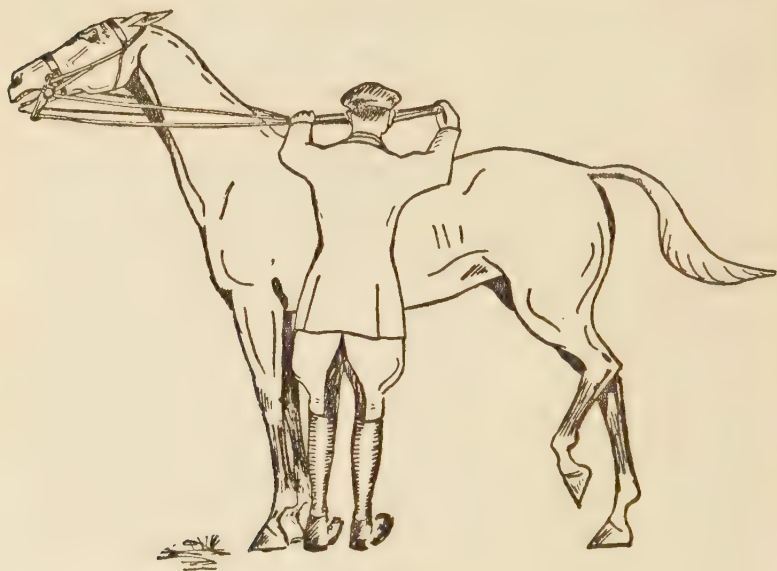


Diagram 7.

prevent them becoming entangled or twisted, the right hand should grasp the centre of the ends of both reins, between the first finger and thumb, and hold them stretched back over the cantle of the saddle, the bit-rein being held slacker than the bridoon-rein so as to avoid any risk of jobbing the horse's mouth in the act of mounting. This will give an even and light feeling on the horse's mouth

and the rider will be able to insert the fingers of the left hand through the reins in the following order for their separation.

Place the little finger of the left hand between the two near side-reins (bridoon-rein outside), the third finger between the two bit-reins, the second finger between the off side-rein and the off side bridoon-rein.

When the fingers of the left hand have been inserted through the reins the hand can slide down them towards the horse's withers. They are now of even and proper length for mounting and the horse's mane or neck should be grasped.

Now drop the slack or spare ends of the reins across to the off side of the horse's shoulder with the right hand, keeping the reins secure by a pressure of the thumb on the forefinger and taking care to have the bit-rein slacker than the bridoon-rein.

POSITION OF THE RIDER AND CONTROL OF THE HORSE.

The position of the rider standing level with the point of the horse's shoulder and the method of holding the reins will give the maximum amount of control which can be obtained, and will check any forward movement on the part of the horse. The reins being of equal length will tend to keep the horse steady and any forward movement can be checked by a slight backward pressure of the left hand towards the front arch of the saddle. Should the near side-reins be held tighter than the off side-reins the horse is able to circle round on his forehand so as to edge away from the would-be rider. Again, should the off side-reins be held tighter than the

near side-reins the horse will be able to swing his hind-quarters round towards the rider and unbalance him when in the act of mounting.

Further, some horses are inclined to be extremely “ tetchy ” whilst being mounted, and have an unpleasant habit of “ cow-kicking ” at the rider with the near hind-leg ; however, the rider’s forward position at the point of the horse’s shoulder will entirely eliminate the possibility of being kicked.

But, the chief reason for the forward position of the rider when mounting is that should the horse move forward, the rider will not be “ left behind,” and will experience no difficulty in swinging into the saddle should the horse move on.

Now take the stirrup-iron in the right hand, remembering to turn it in the correct manner, so that when mounted the side of the stirrup-iron which is nearest to the horse’s head, when it hangs free from the saddle, will be on the outside of the foot when mounted.

A twisted stirrup-leather should always be avoided and the novice must learn that the leather should turn with the leg and not against it, which besides being wrong is most uncomfortable and may result in the rider developing a sore shin.

MOUNTING.

Place the left foot well home in the stirrup-iron ; should only the toe of the foot be inserted there is the risk of the foot slipping out, which, apart from being likely to upset the rider, might also startle the horse, which should be avoided, particularly at this early stage.

Great care must be taken to keep the toe down

and inclined to the right, so as to prevent the rider digging the horse in the flank when it is in the stirrup-iron.

Next grasp the cantle of the saddle with the right hand (back of the hand uppermost) and with the

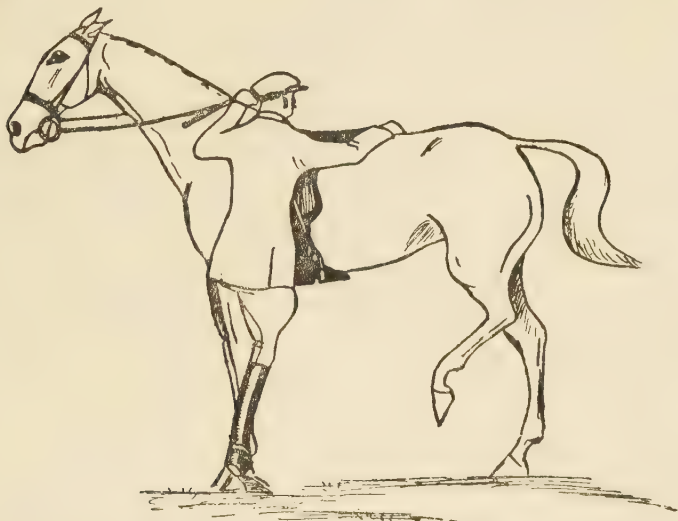


Diagram 8.

Note position of the rider's body by the horse's shoulder.

The reason for this forward position of the rider is that should the horse move forward the rider will not be "left behind" and will experience no difficulty in swinging into the saddle should the horse move on.

The reins and stick are in the left hand (never have the stick or whip in the right hand when mounting).

Note the right hand is grasping the cantle of the saddle.

Note particularly the position of the left foot in the stirrup-iron—the toe is turned down and pointing away from the horse so as to prevent any chance of digging the toe into the horse's flank.

left knee against the saddle-flap spring up off the toe of the right foot, straighten the left leg and swing the right leg well over the horse's croup and let the body sink gently and firmly down into the saddle, and not with a bump.

As the rider's right leg is swinging across the horse's quarters the right hand which has been

grasping the cantle of the saddle to give leverage will be automatically relinquishing its hold and going to the front. Now feel for the right stirrup-iron with the toe and take it without having to look down.

Now place the right hand on the off side-reins, little finger separating them (the bridoon-reins being outside the little finger), and remove these off reins entirely from the left hand, the reins in both cases passing up through the palms of the hands between the first fingers and thumbs and the slack falling down the off shoulder of the horse.

When the pupil has become more adept in mounting, a stick or whip may be permitted, and this must always be held in the left, or bridle hand, when mounting and dismounting.

MOUNTING WITHOUT STIRRUPS.¹

Mounting without the use of the stirrup-iron should be practised by all in the event of an emergency arising, such as the loss of a stirrup-iron, so as to make one independent of the actual stirrup, but also in order to make the rider more

¹ The method of mounting without stirrups which is employed in racing stables is much more practical and gives one greater control of the horse, being in a more forward position with a shorter rein and, moreover, enables the ordinarily active person to mount whilst the horse is actually moving forward. With the left hand grasp the reins close up and evenly on the horse's neck (well up above his withers), taking care to throw the slack to the off side. Take hold of the front arch of the saddle firmly in the right hand, bend the knees and spring up from the ground off the toes high enough to get one's belt on a level with the withers, then throw one's right leg across the horse. The keynote to mounting successfully in this fashion is to aim at getting a good spring sufficiently high enough to get the left elbow well across the horse's neck: should one not have jumped high enough in the first place, with the aid of a well-bent elbow (point of the elbow pointing to the ground on the off side) one can get sufficient leverage to wriggle up.

active and supple, and foster the element of handiness.

To mount without the aid of the stirrup grasp the reins in the left hand, together with the front arch of the saddle; throw the slack of the reins to the off side and place the right hand on the cantle of the saddle. Next bend the knees, spring up, and by straightening both arms raise the body above the saddle; throw the right leg over the horse's back simultaneously releasing hold of the cantle of the saddle with the right hand and placing it on the front arch and sink gently into the saddle.

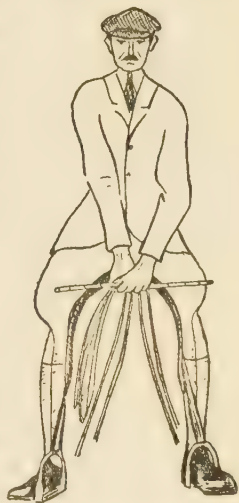


Diagram 9.

DISMOUNTING WITH STIRRUPS.

To dismount take all the reins in the left hand, and hold them evenly and firmly so as to have a definite feeling with the horse's mouth, grasp the horse's mane or neck just before the withers, place the right hand on the front arch of the saddle and take the right foot out of the stirrup-iron.

Now lean forward and straighten the right arm in order to support the weight of the body and swing the right leg back and well clear of the horse's croup, turning the body in the process so that when the right foot reaches the ground, the rider will be facing towards the horse's tail. When, and only when, the right foot has reached the ground should the left foot be taken out of the stirrup-iron.

DISMOUNTING WITHOUT STIRRUPS.

Dismounting without the use of the stirrup-iron is, however, advisable for children and beginners, being the safest method. Kick both feet free of the stirrup-irons, then place both hands on the front



Diagram 10.

arch of the saddle, and throwing the weight of the body forward on to the hands, swing the right leg over the horse's back and alight on the toes.

Another method of dismounting is to release both feet from the stirrup-irons simultaneously, drop the reins, and throw the right leg over the horse's neck and slide to the ground on both feet. However, this method is not advocated for the novice, as there is

always the likelihood of the horse throwing up his head and catching the rider's right leg at the wrong moment, which may result in a nasty and unnecessary toss. However, if the horse is accustomed to this method, and is not likely to become restive, it should be practised in the *manège* or stable-yard, as it tends to make the rider agile and supple. It should never be attempted by the novice in the open, because the reins having to be dropped momentarily, the horse might choose that precise moment to move off.

In dismounting this way the novice must be careful to remove both feet from the stirrup-irons as one is apt to become confused, owing to the left foot always being retained in the stirrup-iron until the right foot reaches the ground by the orthodox method.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

In order to accustom the pupil to the horse, when the lesson is over he should be instructed to lead the horse from the *manège* or riding-school back to the stable. To do so the pupil should grasp the near side-reins in the right hand close to the bit. Should the horse be restive and refuse to lead properly, the reins should be taken over his head and grasped together in the right hand about a foot from the bit, whilst the slack should be held by the disengaged hand. This method will ensure a double hold on the horse, for should he jump away or rear up, and the grip of the right hand is lost, there will still be a hold on the ends of the reins. Should the horse jib, and refuse to move, the pupil must not turn round and look him in the face, but the instructor should make him move forward.

On reaching the stable or loose box the pupil can learn the correct method of leading



Diagram 11.

the horse through a doorway (in order that the animal should not damage his hips or damage the saddle) by walking backwards in front of the

horse, holding the bit on either side with both hands.

The pupil should now be shown how to take off the saddle and bridle.

The pupil should learn with double reins, whether the horse is bridled in a double-bridle or a snaffle is immaterial, but double reins undoubtedly assist in fostering the formation of "hands," giving a more even distribution of feeling with the horse's mouth, besides getting the pupil accustomed to manipulating double reins. It is preferable to use double reins on a big-ringed snaffle in these early stages, rather than a Pelham or a bit and bridoon. With double reins see that they are separated and that the two reins do not lie together between the same fingers.

For mounting lessons a particularly quiet horse should be selected, which will stand docile under the most difficult circumstances whilst the pupil is scrambling in and out of the saddle. Instruction by demonstration should be the keynote to this lesson and throughout all the subsequent lessons which are described in this book. There is no better method of teaching equitation than by Demonstration, Explanation, and Imitation.

From the first endeavour to get the pupil at home with his horse and encourage him to pat it and make much of it after the completion of any particular movement.

CHAPTER III

THE SEAT

TO possess a good seat in the saddle is the objective of every rider and the bed-rock of equitation. Therefore, from the commencement, the beginner should concentrate on endeavouring to attain a good natural seat which should be comfortable and firm. The seat is governed by the combination of balance and grip and these two factors can only be attained by constant practice, perseverance, and the genuine desire to learn to ride. No half-hearted measures will result in success, and to achieve the objective the pupil must at once realise that the first essential in learning to ride is keenness.

Some people have a more natural aptitude for acquiring the art of horsemanship than others, being more suitable physically and temperamentally. Again, some have been favoured by the atmosphere of their environment, i.e. having been brought up in the country with facilities for riding.

However, this is merely an influence which may or may not have been used to any advantage.

First and foremost riding is an acquired art, and can only be learned by continual application and concentration of mind and body.

The degree of horsemanship which can be attained

depends entirely on the will power of the individual, and the determination to master the art.

From the initial stage the rider should endeavour to get into a good position and concentrate on retaining this position, striving always to improve on it throughout all the subsequent lessons. A good position is the first essential towards the formation of a secure seat.

POSITION OF THE BODY.

Having mounted the horse correctly as described in the preceding chapter, the rider should sit square to the front, comfortably and evenly in the saddle, with body and head erect, and with the eyes looking straight between the horse's ears.

Elbows should be close to the sides (comfortably close, eliminate any inclination to rigidity).

Sitting down easily in the saddle the rider should allow the muscles of the legs to be relaxed and then gradually turn the legs in close to the saddle so as to grip with the flat of the thighs and the *inside of the knees* which is the *most important* point of contact between the man and his mount.

To simplify this explanation turn the toes of the feet naturally to the front with the heels pressed down and the knees will then automatically come into their correct position against the saddle-flaps.

Every endeavour should be made to be as supple as possible in the saddle from the hips upwards, but at the same time any tendency to loll or give the appearance of a slack or clumsy attitude should be avoided.

POSITION OF LEGS AND FEET.

The legs hanging easily from a bent and gripping



Diagram 1. THE SEAT

A good position, the rider's head, body, arms, legs, and feet are correct, and is one that denotes perfect control.

The horse is standing well, properly collected, and well up in his bridle, ready to respond to the rider. The whole combined position of man and mount is alertness.

Points to Notice

The Rider.

Sitting well down in the centre of the saddle.

Hands.

Wrists well rounded and just above the front arch of the saddle with a nice feel on the horse's mouth, with a correct length of rein. Leg position is good with a firm knee grip. Heels are well pressed down.

The Horse.

Good head carriage with neck nicely flexed. The horse's hocks are well under him. His position is that of a perfectly balanced horse.

knee downwards should be slightly drawn back in rear of an imaginary perpendicular line running from the point of the knee-cap to the ground. A

rider, therefore, sitting in the correct position in the saddle without any forward movement of head or body should just be able to see the point of the toe below the knee. The legs below the knees



Diagram 2. THE SEAT

A bad, ill-balanced seat which is reacting on the horse.

Points to Notice

Toes pointing down, heels up, knees off the saddle denoting absence of grip. Rider's hands are in a wrong position and holding the reins too short. The slovenly attitude and bad position of the rider has accounted for the uncollected appearance and sluggish attitude of an otherwise good horse ; moreover, there is a complete absence of control.

must not be stiff, but they must be steady for the lower part of a horseman's legs have a very important rôle to perform in the application of the aids which will be fully explained in Chapter V.

On no account should the back or fleshy part of

the calves be used in gripping, for should they be so used it will mean that the rider's thighs and

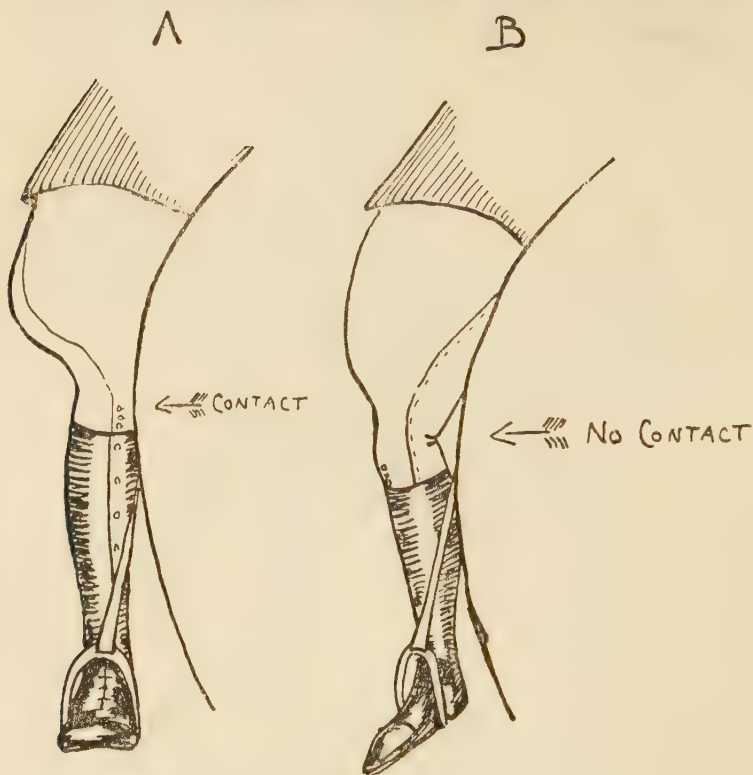


Diagram 3.

A. CORRECT POSITION, A GOOD LEG WITH GRIP

Toe to the front and toe up, and the heel is down, which will ensure correct position of knee against saddle.

B. BAD LEG POSITION WITHOUT GRIP

Toe drooping down and out, and the heel being higher than the toe will automatically take the knee off the saddle. In this position the rider is gripping with the back of the calf.

Diagram B shows the "fatal triangle of daylight" between the rider's knee and the saddle, which denotes absence of grip.

knees are being turned automatically off the saddle. It would be impossible to grip in the correct way at the knees and also have a point of contact with

the back of the calves and the saddle. The incorrect method, which is very prevalent with beginners, instantly creates "the fatal triangle of daylight" between the knee and the saddle.

The rules for the feet are very definite and rigid. Heels must be kept pressed down and the toes

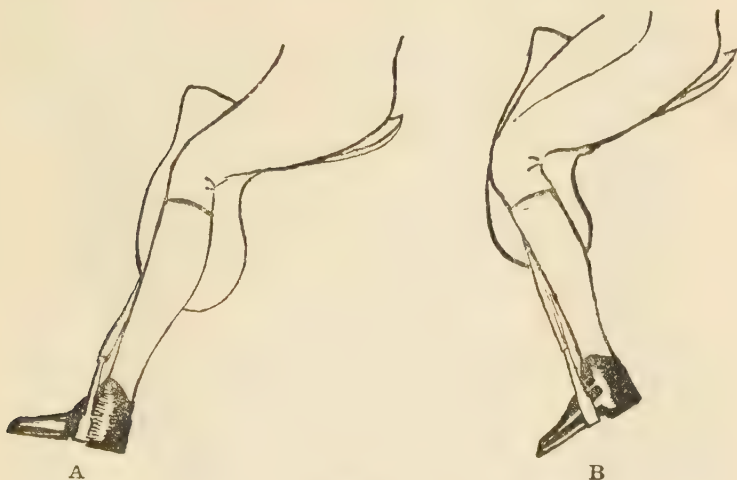


Diagram 4.

A. *Wrong.*

The leg and foot are too far forward. The rider is relying on his stirrups to keep his seat and not on his knee grip.

B. *Wrong.*

An insecure seat. The leg is too far back, position of heel and toe is bad and denotes poor balance, likewise weak grip.

This position indicates complete lack of control of the horse.

raised. Further the fact of the toes being raised tightens the riding muscles and once they *are* allowed to droop, or point downwards, the tension of the muscles is relaxed.

The feet of the novice should be so placed in the stirrup-irons that the ball of the foot rests on the iron, and this method will counteract the usual tendency to point the toe downwards which means

that the heel goes up, which, besides being a very bad fault, and a particularly ugly one, results in a weak seat.

There are two methods for the foot position in

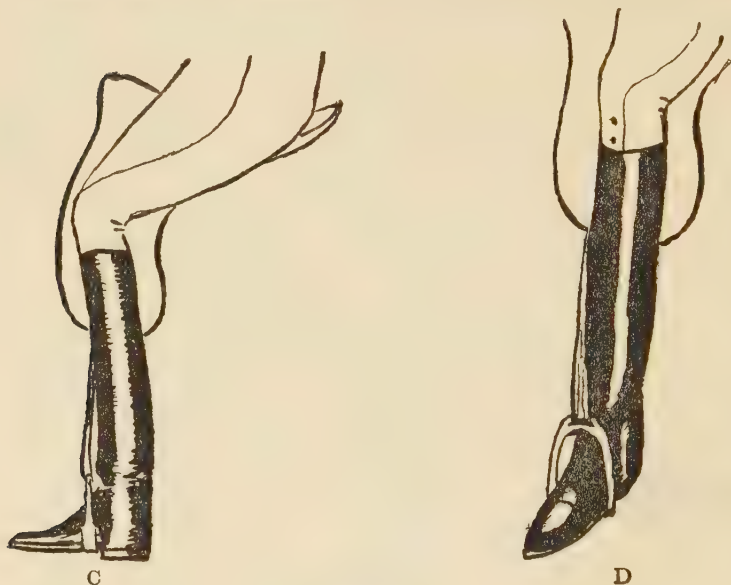


Diagram 4.

C. *Right.*

A good firm seat, rider sitting well down in the centre of the saddle. A good leg and foot: leg hanging straight down and pliable from a bent knee. Heel is well down and the toe is up, which denotes a firm knee grip.

D. *Wrong.*

This diagram explains itself. Toe is down and out: heel is up. This foot position causes rider's knee to be off the saddle and to grip with the calves of the leg. This leg position denotes a loose seat and a complete lack of control.

the stirrup-iron: (1) riding with the iron under the ball of the foot, and (2) with the foot shoved "home" in the iron, so that it comes under the instep. The first method is far more preferable, particularly for the novice, as it assists to keep the heels down in the correct style, besides causing

more resilience or spring from the ankle joint. However, both methods are equally correct, but the novice should always be encouraged to abide by No. 1.

Always remember to press the feet against the inside of the stirrups.



Diagram 4.

E. *Correct.*

Stirrup in the "home" position, i.e. under the instep. With the stirrups under the instep the rider is deprived of the elasticity which can be obtained from the ankle-joint. But it is, however, essentially the position for hard riding.

F. *Correct.*

Should the rider have a tendency to point the toe down and keep the heel up, this method of riding with the stirrup under the ball of the foot is recommended. Further, it ensures full advantage being obtained from the elasticity of the ankle joint. As there is no stiffening of the ankle joint the foot is in a natural position. When jumping this "Correct F" method with the elasticity of the ankle joints functioning will absorb the shock when landing over a fence.

INFLUENCE OF THE CONFORMATION OF THE BODY.

The bodily structure of the pupil has an important bearing in learning to ride, and the short stocky pupil with round thighs and thick calves will be at a disadvantage to the slightly built rider with flat thighs and thin legs. Lady riders who ride astride are also at a disadvantage to men owing to the different conformation of the body, particularly at the knee-joints, also roundness of the thighs and lack of muscle.

Again, some individuals are gifted with more suppleness of body than others ; this is a tremendous asset in learning to ride, for in the saddle the perfect rider moves his body with a natural poise from the hips upwards in rhythm with his horse's movements at all paces.

BALANCE AND GRIP.

Riding is largely a matter of balance and until the rider has become more accustomed to being on a horse's back, and the nervous tendency so natural to beginners lessened, progress will be slow, but on no account should the rider be disheartened or discouraged by feeling “ at sea ” in the saddle.

As the grip improves the seat will be coming more secure and balance will be improving, which will increase the rider's confidence. Awkwardness in the saddle is only natural for a novice, and will continue until the rider becomes more used to the “ grip.” The grip of the knees should not be too tight, otherwise the element of fatigue will arise. The “ grip ” is best described as a pressure and should only be tightened into a grip by the novice to steady himself in an emergency.

A good rider knows instinctively when to tighten his grip, should his horse swerve suddenly, or stumble, his knee grip which is comfortably pressing against the saddle automatically becomes likened to a vice. It is the combination of true balance and the knowledge of how to grip and when to apply the grip, either in anticipation of the horse's movements or in an emergency, which produces the “ independent ” seat. Continual concentration of mind and determination on the part of the

novice will ultimately give success. The more one rides, the more one will become accustomed to horses and their ways, and then the rider should be attaining the faculty of "horse instinct."

ADJUSTMENT OF THE STIRRUP-LEATHERS.

The correct adjustment of the stirrup-leather is a most important feature in riding, and for the novice it is essential that the leathers should be the right length in order to foster the balance and the grip.

The seat is assisted in strength and security by the use of the stirrups, but too much reliance should not be placed in the stirrups. Their functions are for rest and comfort, and for assisting the rider's seat towards security.

If the leathers are too short the rider is forced to sit too far back in his saddle, practically on the cantle, which not only places the rider "behind his horse," in a cramped and a precarious position, but also tends to give the horse a sore back.

On the other hand, too long leathers means that the rider is not sitting evenly on the seat-bones and that little or no assistance is being received from the stirrups. Further, in order to retain the stirrups, should they be too long, the rider will be over-reaching, and losing his seat, by leaning forward in his endeavour to keep them.

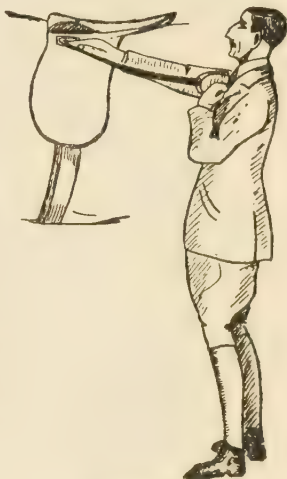


Diagram 5.

There are two ways of adjusting the stirrup-leathers:

I. Before Mounting.

The approximate length of the stirrup-leather can be judged by measuring with the bottom of the stirrup-iron under the arm-pit along an out-stretched arm to the tips of the fingers resting at the top of the leather, i.e. where the leather meets the side-bar of the saddle from where it is suspended.



Diagram 6.

TO ADJUST STIRRUP-LEATHERS

Retain foot in stirrup and use as a leverage to assist hand in fixing correct length.

Index-finger can direct tongue of buckle into correct hole.

II. After Mounting.

Sitting down evenly in the saddle with the legs hanging down naturally the base of the stirrup-irons should be level with the ankle bones.

Remember when mounted that the leathers should be adjusted without removing the feet from the stirrups. In fact the adjustment of the stirrup-leathers can be

greatly facilitated by using the foot to keep the leather steady whilst it is being altered, also the foot can act as a leverage on the iron when the desired length is fixed and the rider wishes to get the buckle of the leather back into its correct position flush with the side-bar of the saddle.

Care should be taken to see that the stirrup-leathers are curved, or lie flat with the leg correctly, and are not twisted against it, a fault which may result in sore shins, besides giving an ugly appearance. For a good method of ensuring that the leathers will be correct before mounting grasp the base of the stirrup-iron with the hand and twist the "near" leather corkscrew fashion left over right towards the horse's tail, and the "off" leather right over left, also towards the horse's tail. This will make them hang in the correct curve and facilitate taking the stirrups.

Always tuck the slack end of the leathers round and under the leathers and back, in order to avoid

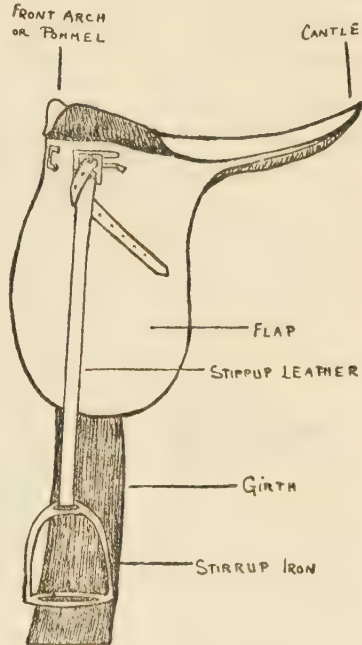


Diagram 7. A SADDLE

To show method of turning back the stirrup-leather.

Note.—Always see that the buckle of the stirrup-leather is flush with the side-bar. It will make a clicking noise when it gets into the correct position.

three thicknesses of leather at the knee grip instead of two which is cumbersome, besides the fact that the turn back gives a more workmanlike appearance.

It is a heinous offence to reinsert the slack of the leather in the buckle of the leather.



Diagram 8. HOW TO TIGHTEN THE GIRTHS WITHOUT DISMOUNTING

If it is desired to tighten the girths when one is already in the saddle without dismounting, one can do so by the method shown in Diagram 8.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

The pupil must sit evenly in his saddle and his weight should be so distributed that he is sitting

squarely on the seat-bones. Beginners have a tendency to crouch in the saddle, and although the contrast of sitting up like a poker is to be avoided, every endeavour should be made to get the pupil to sit up.

A great deal depends on the type and temperament of the pupil, and whether or not he has ever been on a horse's back before. In any case it is a sound principle when the stirrups have been correctly adjusted and the correct method of holding the reins shown (see Chapter IV) to allow the pupil to walk slowly round the *manège*, or riding-school. All this elementary work should be taught in a confined space in order to give the novice confidence, knowing that his horse cannot run away, and also that there should be nothing to distract the attention of the pupil or his mount. In every case the horse should be a most docile animal.

The keynote to instructing pupils is quietness and patience, and an unlimited amount of the latter characteristic which is a fundamental principle in teaching beginners, particularly those of nervous category. If the instructor is gifted with the faculty of being able to place himself in the novice's position, and remember that the horse is an unknown and possibly a very frightening element with some of his pupils, it will tend to assist him with his instruction. Harsh methods or hastiness in the elementary stage usually terminate in disaster with a broken nerve or the pupil's dread of horseflesh.

The instructor should know the type of pupil he has under him after a few minutes on the horse's back. Naturally those pupils who show confidence

and a likelihood of learning quickly can be given a great deal more instruction as to position, seat, grip, and hands during the preliminary lessons than those nervously inclined, to whom words of instruction at the initial stage are almost wasted, being as they are entirely concentrated on the horse and the fear of falling off, and all the other imaginary accidents which could or could not occur.

Most instructors fail to realise that it rests with them, their manner, personality, and understanding, to inspire the pupil with confidence from the commencement, and thereby make the lessons a pleasure for the pupil and not a dreaded task.

Beginners have a tendency to sit perched back on the cantle of the saddle, and every endeavour should be made to get them “ split up,” i.e. sitting with the seat well down in the saddle. To teach the pupil how and where to grip allow him to sit down in the centre of the saddle with the legs hanging down full length, and relaxed, then get him to gradually turn the toes in, keeping the heels down, which will bring the inside of the knee against the saddle.

The instructor can judge the correct height at which the pupil's knee can be so that he can have full advantage of all the power he can for gripping both by the inside of the knees and the flat of the thighs. Prevent any tendency to grip with the calves.

As the pupil progresses pieces of paper may be placed between his knees and the saddle-flaps to test his ability to grip at the walk and later at the

trot and canter. A judicious riding without stirrups is a splendid exercise for strengthening the novice's muscles.

To bring home to the pupils the correct position of the heels, the instructor, besides demonstrating it from his own horse's back, should emphasise it by crunching a stone into the ground with his heel, and constantly remind the pupils of the action they would take to grind or squash a shell with their heels. Be careful when explaining the knee grip that the pupil understands that the lower part of the legs should hang free, but that they must be still and should not swing backward and forward like pendulums when the horse trots, and that they will have functions to perform in the way of applying the aids when the pupils have arrived at this later stage. Great care should be taken not to over-fatigue the pupil when riding without stirrups.

The pupil should also be taught how to replace his feet in the stirrups without having to look down.

Although it is essential to get the rider, particularly the novice, to turn his toes well to the front in order to get him to grip with the inside of the knee, yet forcing the toes to the front must be avoided otherwise the ankles will be in a twisted and unnatural position.

With a pupil who is inclined to walk with the toes turned out greater difficulty will be experienced in keeping the toes straight when in the saddle than with a pupil who is not inclined to turn his toes out.

Remember that the pupil must be in as comfortable a position as possible, therefore avoid any position which will cause discomfort, for this will always retard the pupil's progress.

A very excellent method for teaching the pupil to grip correctly with the knee is to get him to concentrate on keeping his heels down and outwards away from the horse's flanks—the fact of endeavouring to keep the heels *down and out* will guarantee that the whole leg turns correctly with the knee against the saddle, whereas the fact of

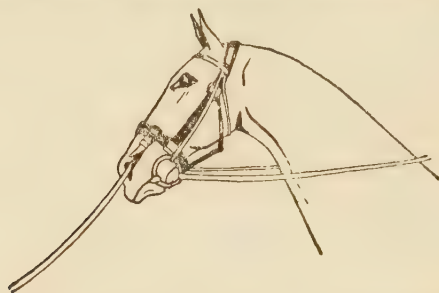


Diagram 9. HOW TO ATTACH A LONGEING-REIN

concentrating on just keeping the toes in will be liable to cause the ankle only to be turned, which will be an uncomfortable and cramped position.

If the pupil is nervous every effort should be made by the instructor to inspire him with confidence. It may be necessary to put the pupil on the longeing-rein. Should the longeing-rein be used, do not attach it to the bit. This is both bad for the horse's mouth and bad for the rider's hands, as it interferes with his having an even feeling on the reins. Put on a head-stall under the bridle and attach the longeing-rein to the nose-band.

This facilitates the rein being moved over to whichever side it is required, e.g. should the horse be going round on a left hand circle the rein can be run round to the near side of the head-stall, and *vice versa*.

CHAPTER IV

THE HANDS

POSITION OF THE HANDS.

IT is essential that the beginner should learn the correct position for the hands and the correct method of holding the reins at the first lesson.

Commencing from the shoulders the arms should hang straight down with the elbows close to the sides (comfortably close, avoid any cramped or rigid position). The forearms are then extended towards the horse's head, being slightly curved inwards across the rider's body so that the hands will come just above the front arch or pommel of the saddle. The hands should be kept low, and should be between four and five inches apart, and the wrists should be rounded so that the backs of the hands are directly opposite the horse's ears, thumbs uppermost.

Play should be allowed to movements of the horse's head from the wrists, elbows, and when necessary from the shoulders.

FLEXIBILITY OF THE WRISTS.

The reason for this position of the hands is to facilitate full benefit being derived from the flexibility of the wrists. This flexibility of the wrists

is necessary in order to foster that essential "give-and-take" action between the rider's hands and the horse's mouth which can only be obtained by

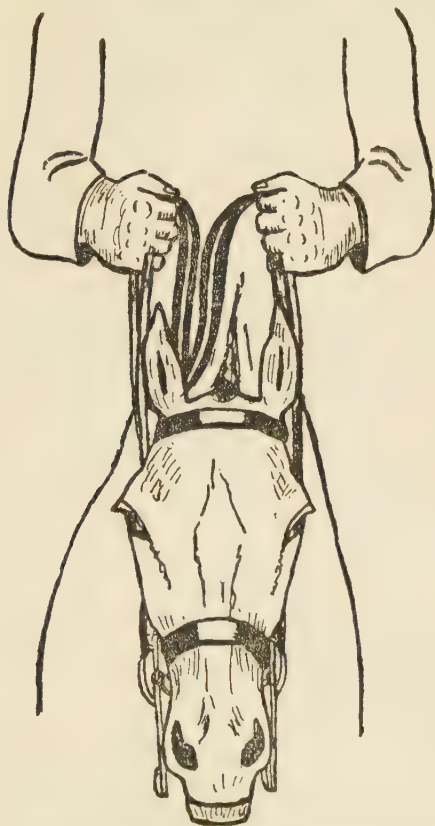


Diagram 1. POSITION OF THE HANDS AND HOW TO HOLD THE REINS—
VIEWED FROM FRONT

having the hands in the correct position, i.e. backs of the hands to the front, thumbs uppermost.

The hands and wrists should never be rigid, but should always be ready to yield in sympathy to the movements of the horse's head; for example, if the horse reaches out his neck the hands should give

with him and then automatically resume the correct attitude as his head comes back. Any tendency towards stiffness with the hands, or straight wrists, must be avoided. Good hands can only be attained from a suppleness of the fingers, wrists, and arms, which will ensure the necessary play with the horse's mouth.

The action of a horseman's wrists can be likened to the hinge of a door, but the movement must not be associated or interpreted as a stiff motion. The wrists should be loose and pliable in a perfectly unconstrained position.

Now, apart from fostering this very necessary “give-and-take” contact between the rider's hands and the horse's mouth by means of the rounded and pliable position of the wrists, there is the following advantage to be gained, viz. :

Should one want to check the horse and shorten the reins without having recourse to the process of drawing them up through the hands, as will be described later in this chapter, one has merely to turn the backs of the hands round and downwards so that the eyes can see the finger nails. This turn of the hands and wrists towards the body automatically causes more pressure to be exerted on the horse's mouth.

The tension caused by this wrist movement can be applied and relaxed. A horse is more easily controlled by a feeling of elasticity on the reins than by a dead pressure, therefore the pliable action of the wrists facilitates control. Further, the correct position of the wrists will cause the rider to keep his elbows close to the body and prevent any tendency to having “splayed” elbows.



By permission of Colonel Rodzanko

COLONEL RODZANKO AT THE METROPOLITAN MOUNTED POLICE HORSE SHOW,
— IMMER COURT —

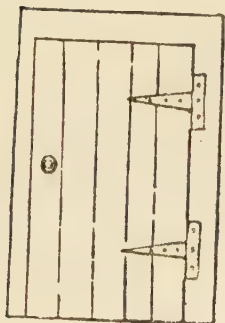
W. W. Roush & Co.

(See over)

Colonel P. Rodzanko, C.M.G., late Russian Imperial Cavalry, on his Irish horse "Zorab," when winning the open jumping competition at the Metropolitan Mounted Police Horse Show, Imber Court. Here we have a perfect demonstration of a rider "going with" his horse. Note that he is sitting well forward in order to take the weight off the horse's loins and so enable him to raise his hind-quarters. Note, also, that the rider's hands are extended, giving the horse plenty of rein but at the same time maintaining a light contact with the horse's mouth. Liberty of rein is essential when jumping, as the horse must not be prevented from lowering his head, which he must do in order that he may arch his back properly and so raise his hind-quarters sufficiently to clear the jump.

RIGHT

The Door Hinge Action



Right Position



The Wrist is the Hinge
of a horseman's hand.

Right Position



WRONG

The Box Hinge Action.



Wrong Position.



Wrong Position



Diagram 2. THE WRIST IS THE HINGE OF THE HORSEMAN'S HAND

HOLDING THE REINS.

The reins should be held in both hands. When riding with double reins the bridoon- or snaffle-reins should pass round the outside little fingers of both hands, with the bit or curb-reins on the

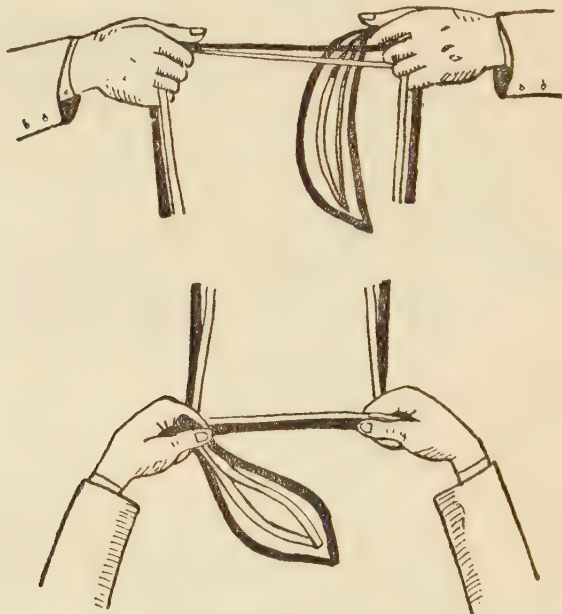


Diagram 3.

VIEWED FROM THE FRONT
Bit-reins inside shown white.

BIRD'S-EYE VIEW
Bit-reins inside shown white.

inside, i.e. separated from the bridoon-reins by the little fingers. The reins should then pass up flat through the palms of the hands, between the index or first fingers and thumbs ; the reins are held secure by closing the thumbs on the forefingers.

The slack or loose ends of the reins should then

hang down the horse's off, or right, shoulder between the hands.

There is an alternative method for holding the

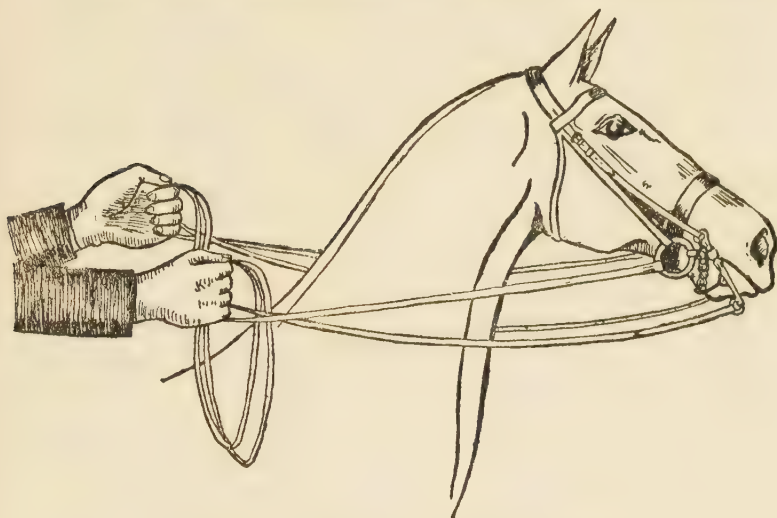


Diagram 4. RIDING ON THE BRIDOO-REIN

Showing a horse going comfortably in his bridle.

This method of holding the reins guarantees that the horse's mouth cannot be "jobbed" by the curb-rein in the novice's hands.

Here the rider is riding with the bridoon- or snaffle-reins round or outside the little finger with the bit-reins inside or round the third finger.

The action of the snaffle-rein is to raise the horse's head in contrast to the action of the curb-rein, which makes the horse bend his head from the poll and relax his jaw to pressure on the bars of the mouth, caused by the lever action of the mouthpiece and the action of the curb-chain.

The reason for changing the position of the reins round the different fingers when riding by the method Diagram 4 or by Diagram 6 and not allowing the bit or outside rein to be slack and still outside the little finger, is that the outside reins are always apt to get more taut than the reins on the inside.

Note the slackness of the curb-chain which would become in close contact with the chin-groove if pressure were brought to bear on the curb- or bit-rein.

To exemplify the method of holding the reins the rider's hands have been raised and separated, neither are the wrists rounded as they should be.

reins which is as follows: One can take all four reins in the left hand, as described in Chapter II, page 51, and then take up the off side-reins in the right hand by placing it in front of the left hand,

and pulling a sufficient amount of the slack forward through the left hand to obtain an even bearing on the horse's mouth with both hands.

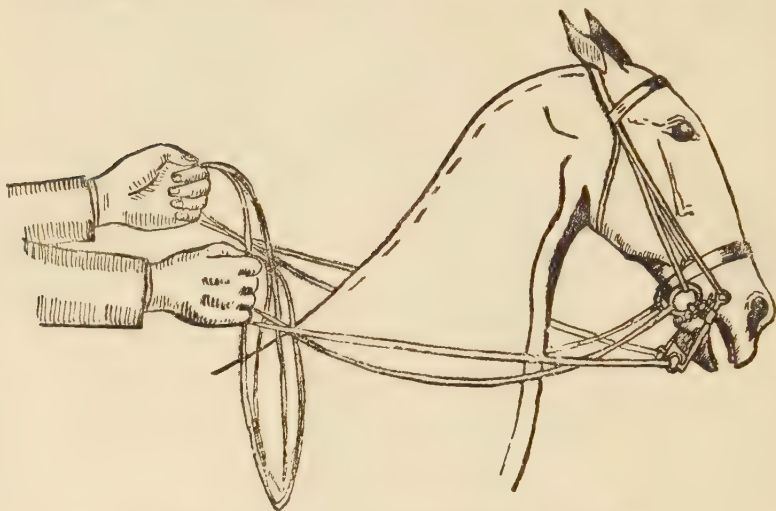


Diagram 5. RIDING ON THE CURB- OR BIT-REIN

Showing an unhappy horse being ridden on the bit-reins by an inexperienced rider. The horse is in abject misery.

This diagram illustrates (i) the action of the curb-rein on the horse's jaw, and (ii) the utter discomfort it can cause to the horse if used improperly. For demonstration purposes an exaggerated or severe pressure has been brought to bear on the curb-reins to show the lever action of the bit and how the curb-chain functions.

Note that as the horse is being ridden on the curb-rein that the curb-reins are round or outside the little fingers with the bridoon-reins on the inside. The horse is bending his head at the poll and relaxing his jaw to an accentuated and severe pressure caused by the drastic action of the bit with the curb-chain. Note how taut the curb-chain is in the chin-groove.

To exemplify the method of holding the reins the rider's hands have been raised and separated, neither are the wrists rounded as they should be. As can be seen, the curb-bit can be a very drastic device in the hands of the novice, and it can also be a dangerous bit if wrongly used. From improper use horses develop vice, bad tempers, and become "nappy," usually caused by pain inflicted by the severity of the bit if improperly used.

This method assists the novice in keeping his hands at the correct distance of between four to five inches apart, and will prevent him separating them.

When riding with a single-rein snaffle-bridle, the

reins should be held between the third and fourth fingers, the slack coming up through the palms of the hands, and being secured in the same way as for double reins between forefinger and thumb. When single reins are being held in the left hand

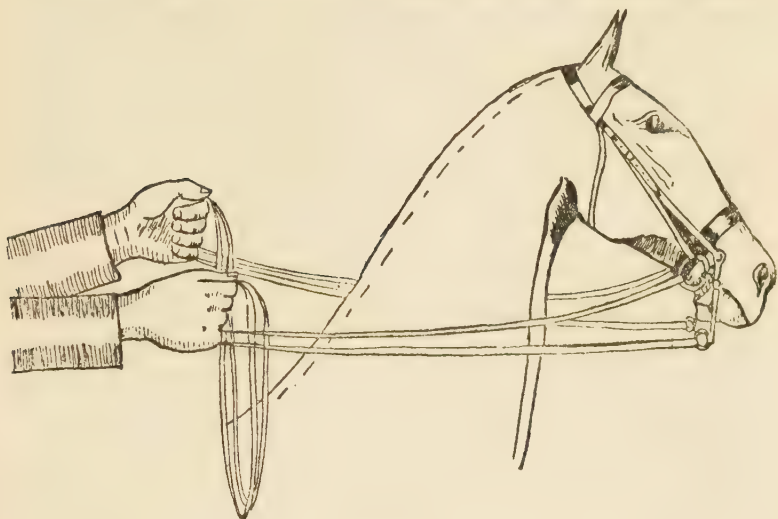


Diagram 6.

Showing a horse going comfortably in his bridle whilst being ridden on the bit- or curb-reins in the hands of an experienced horseman.

To ride with the bit-reins on the outside demands a very delicate touch, which can only be given by a good rider.

Note the bit-reins round the little finger and the bridoon-reins round the third finger. The little finger is more sensitive and, therefore, more sympathetic in acting on the bit in the horse's mouth. Here the horse is bending from the poll and flexing his jaw to the light and even pressure of "good hands."

For demonstration purposes the rider's hands are raised and separated. Note how the curb-chain fits into the chin-groove.

only, the right or off side-rein should be between the first and second fingers and the left or near side-rein outside the fourth finger, the slack passing up through the palm and secured between the forefinger and thumb.

For the various methods of holding the reins and for a complete explanation of the action of the bit

and curb on the horse's mouth (see Diagrams 4, 5, and 6).

The novice should always ride with both hands on the reins; holding all the reins in one hand is not advisable, as it tends to make the rider carry the left shoulder in advance of the right shoulder. When, and not until the rider has shown a definite improvement, carrying the hands well with flexible wrists and has a fair idea of the “give-and-take” movement with the horse's mouth, should any attempt be made to hold the reins in one hand.

INFLUENCE OF RIDER'S SEAT AND CONFIDENCE.

Hands are governed by the seat and only those with a secure or “independent” seat can ever acquire good hands. A firm seat is the sole foundation for “hands,” and as the beginner's seat strengthens so will he be gaining more confidence. With better balance, a firmer seat, and more confidence, the iron-like hold on the reins, which is always a characteristic feature with the novice, will be gradually relaxing.

CONTROL AND CONTACT WITH HORSE'S MOUTH.

The hands by means of the reins, directly control the horse's forehand, the head, neck, and shoulders, i.e. all that part of the horse before the saddle.

The hands should be entirely independent of all movements of the body, and they can only gain complete independence when the rider has attained *balance* and a *firm seat*: as the seat strengthens so will the hands improve.

Contact with the horse's mouth should be by means of an even *feeling* which can best be described

as elastic. The degree of firmness with which the reins are held will depend to a great extent on the type of mouth of the horse. If the horse has a light mouth, the *feeling* on the reins should be of the lightest degree.

The rider should ride with a good length of rein ; reins held short look awkward and instantly spoil the general appearance of a horseman when riding ordinarily. It should be remembered that the less conspicuous a horseman's hands are the more workmanlike and finished he will look. Therefore one should keep one's hands low, just in front of the body and close to the horse's withers. Short reins immediately suggest nervousness on the part of the rider and the lack of a firm seat.

HOLDING THE REINS IN ONE HAND.

As soon as the pupil has shown definite progress in balance, in the position of the hands, strengthening of seat, capability in riding at all paces, and the power to control the horse, riding with all the reins in the left, or bridle hand, should be introduced.

This is the most simple method, and will prevent any amount of fumbling, for beginners are apt to make much heavy weather in manipulating double reins and adjusting them in the correct manner when they have actually mounted. Grasp all the reins with the right hand at the end, and pull them back gently until you have them fairly taut. Then with your left, or bridle hand, separate the reins with the fingers of the left hand, placing the four reins in the following order between the respective fingers of the left hand :—

The little finger between the two near side or left reins with the bridoon-rein on the outside, the

third finger separating the near side bit-rein from the off side bit-rein, and the second finger between the off side reins (bridoon-rein on top). All the reins will pass up flat through the palm of the hand and between the forefinger and thumb, the thumb securing them by pressing down on the forefinger. The slack of the reins should fall down the off

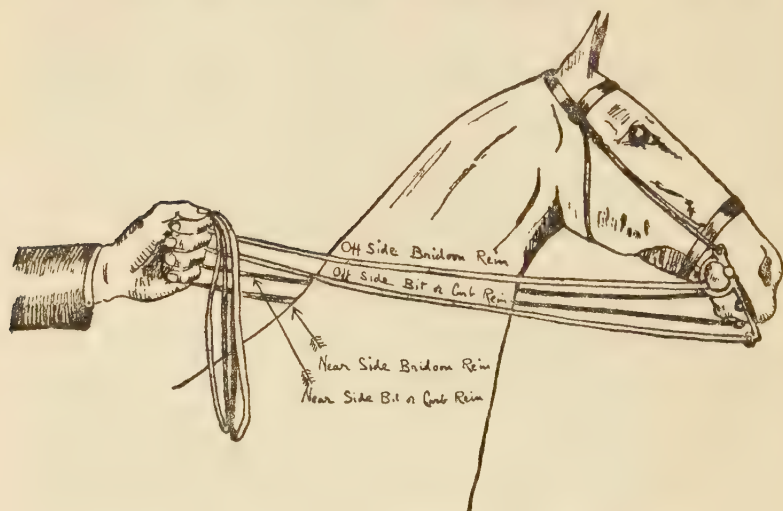


Diagram 7. HOLDING ALL FOUR REINS IN THE LEFT HAND

shoulder of the horse. The right hand will have already automatically released the hold on the reins.

To adjust or to tighten the reins to the required length, draw them through the left or bridle hand by the right hand which is then released. However, as the rider gets more accustomed to manipulating double reins, this correct adjustment of the reins will become a very simple matter.

THE HORSE'S MOUTH.

The horse's mouth is particularly sensitive; therefore every endeavour should be made by the pupil to improve his seat by balance and grip, so as to lessen the tendency to "hold on by the reins," which has a disastrous effect on a horse's mouth. All beginners should ride in a snaffle. If a bit is used, the bit-reins should be held loose and the horse ridden only on the bridoon- or snaffle-reins owing to the severity of the curb and the possibility of being "jobbed" in the mouth by the novice. A bit can be a dangerous factor if used improperly, and steady and well-mannered horses are likely to rear up owing to the pain inflicted by the severity of the curb- or bit-rein. Bit injuries are very difficult to cure and are usually the cause of the horse developing a bad temper or becoming "nappy."

To acquire good "hands," therefore, it is absolutely essential to have a good firm seat (which is only attained by balance and grip). This will ensure that the horse has liberty of rein, and is yet always under control by a light and even feeling on his mouth.

It is a fallacy to say that good hands are born, not made, or that some riders have natural hands. Some people are more likely to become better horsemen than others, owing to the conformation and suppleness of the body and lightness of hand; but riding is an acquired and not an hereditary art, and can only be learnt by great concentration of mind and body. Ladies have often an advantage over men in the matter of light hands, consequently

horses which are inclined to pull, lean and snatch at their bits, and generally fret themselves into a state of excitability, will invariably be found to go in a most tractable manner for a good woman rider.

However, there are fortunately a great number of individuals who happen to be instinctively imbued with the genuine love of horseflesh, either by tradition or inclination, and this asset together with that of determination on the part of the beginner will in nine cases out of ten insure the bridle path to success.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

As the instructor has studied the conformation of the various pupils for the purpose of teaching the seat, the knee and thigh grip, for bodily conformation has an important bearing in teaching equitation, either facilitating it or hampering it, from suppleness or awkwardness of bodily structure; likewise the beginner's hands should be studied. Hands will also vary; some riders will be found to possess heavy and unsympathetic hands from a horseman's point of view, while others will be found to possess light and sensitive hands with flexible wrists which will foster delicacy of touch.

See that the pupil has a fair length of rein. Beginners, particularly those nervously inclined, have ever a tendency to hold the reins as short as possible.

Great patience should be exercised in teaching the position of the hands; time so employed in the initial stage will be time well spent.

Correct any tendency to turn the elbows out.

Remember nervous pupils' minds are invariably concentrated on the horse element, and are therefore difficult to instruct; consequently every possible endeavour should be made to inspire confidence in the pupil, and this instruction, like all elementary lessons, should be given in a place where there can be no element of fright, such as a riding-school, *manège*, or a small paddock, on a quiet horse. Once a pupil has developed a bad habit it is very difficult to eradicate it, therefore the utmost vigilance and unlimited patience should be exercised in correcting faults at the very commencement, and in getting the pupil accustomed to the horse.

A beginner is inclined to separate the hands, especially when turning. *Teaching by demonstration is by far the best method.* The instructor should be mounted in order to demonstrate what he requires, and this is far more satisfactory than by mere verbal instruction and endless repetitions of explanation.

In order to teach the correct movement of the wrist, liken the wrist to the hinge of a door and open and shut a door so as to impress it on the pupil's mind; also liken the play between the hands and the horse's mouth to an elastic contact.

Another good method for teaching the correct position for the hands, which is both simple to explain and to understand, is to tell the pupil to keep his hands in the same position as he would when reading a newspaper.

Constantly remind the pupil of the assimilation of these ideas.

N.B.—In the detail and description of holding the reins it will be noted that it is definitely stated that the bridoon-reins should be held on the outside of the little fingers. This method is advocated in order to save the horse's mouth from being “jobbed” at the hands of the novice. As the outside reins, i.e. those held on the outside of the little fingers, invariably happen to be those reins which are held tighter, it is better that the snaffle- or bridoon-reins should be on the outside and so

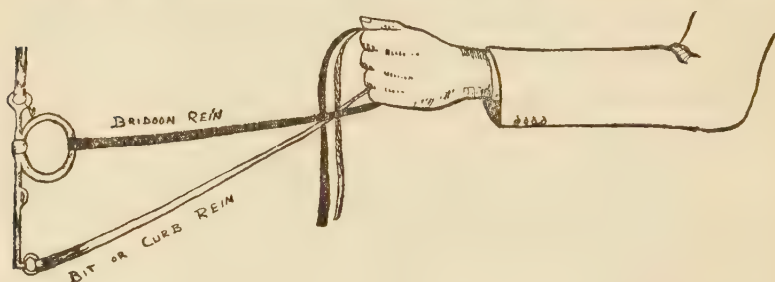


Diagram 8.

Beginners should always ride with the bridoon-rein on the outside and round the little finger, as this method is less severe on the horse's mouth. They will, therefore, be riding on the bridoon-rein and not on the curb-rein, which can have a very severe action if used injudiciously on the horse's mouth.

minimise, as much as possible, the jar on the horse's mouth, which occurs when the pupil endeavours to retain his balance due to any sudden movement of the animal, which would be very severe if the rider was riding on the bit or curb-rein, i.e. with the bit-rein on the outside of the little finger.

(Diagram 8, and again refer to Diagrams 4, 5, and 6 for comparison).

The instructor should bring it home to the pupil that the horse's mouth is naturally just as sensitive to pain as his own, that it has in it a steel bit and

in the chin-groove a curb-chain, that these are connected to his hands by means of the reins, and that it depends on his "hands" as to whether the horse is to go in comfort or in abject torture.

It is essential that the action of the bit in the mouth and the curb should be carefully explained, in order that the pupil can appreciate how the horse can suffer from the severity of the bit from improper and unsympathetic use.

CHAPTER V

SETTING THE HORSE IN MOTION

HAVING mounted and adjusted the stirrup-leathers to the proper length, the rider sits down evenly in the saddle with the knee pressing against the saddle-flaps, heels down, toes up, and with the reins correctly and evenly held with both hands in the correct position.

The rider has a nice length of rein, neither too short nor too long, but one which will guarantee to give a light feeling on the horse's mouth, and with the wrists well rounded to ensure that they will be flexible and so foster the correct "give and take" action or "elastic contact" with the horse's mouth. The rider now wishes to make his horse walk from the halt.

To walk properly the rider must first have his horse standing "collected," i.e. well up in his bit, and with the jaw flexed, which will cause him to bring his head slightly in, bending his neck at the poll. Thus properly balanced, with his hind-quarters under him, the horse is ready to respond to his rider's indications by hand and leg.

CO-ORDINATION OF HANDS AND LEGS.

This "collected" attitude is caused by the rider feeling the reins equally and simultaneously bringing

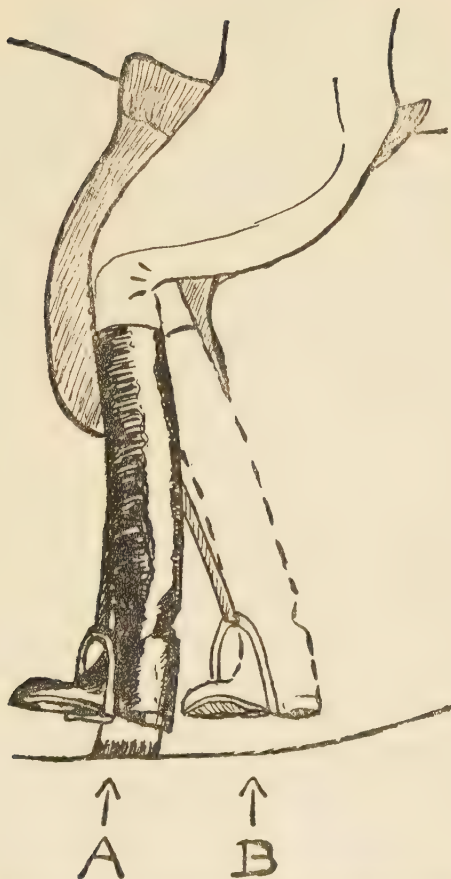


Diagram 1. SHOWING THE CORRECT LEG PRESSURE IN THE APPLICATION OF THE AIDS

Correct Position A.

A. Leg hanging down straight and pliable from a bent and gripping knee.

Note that the heel is well down and toe up and pointing in a natural position.

Correct Position B.

B. To show the application of the leg aids.

Note that the rider applies his leg with a downward and backward pressure behind the girth *without releasing his knee grip to do so.*

The action with the lower part of the legs in applying the aids might be likened to a squeezing movement.

However much readers may think they use their legs, they may be absolutely certain that they do not use them enough.

to bear a slight and backward pressure with the lower part of both legs behind the girths, and then relaxing this leg pressure and easing the feeling on the horse's mouth. (When applying this leg pressure the novice must try to retain his knee grip. Difficulty will be experienced in doing so in the early stages.)

This is the first indication of alertness which man conveys to his mount, and it might be likened to the word of command “ attention ” given by an officer to his men to prepare them for further orders.

THE ELEMENTARY AIDS.

These indications to the horse, or signals of communication between the rider and the horse, are known in equitation parlance as the “ Application of the Aids.” The rider having given the preliminary cautionary signals by feeling the reins and applying the legs to the Aid Area, the horse should be ready to respond to further indications.

THE WALK.

Therefore with another firm and backward pressure of both legs behind the girths and a slight relaxation of the feeling on the reins the horse will step forward at the walk ; simultaneously as the horse responds by moving forward so should the rider release his leg pressure.

The horse is now stepping out with freedom of action and well up in his bit, the rider having a light but even feeling with his mouth, which at the same time ensures perfect control.

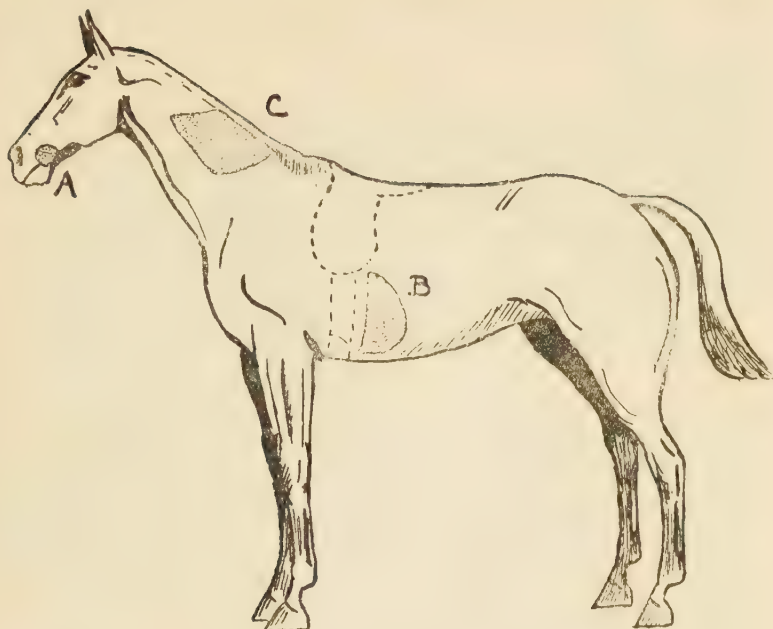


Diagram 2. To ILLUSTRATE THE AID AREAS

Aid localities marked A B C, to which the rider's hands and legs must be applied simultaneously to give the correct indication to the horse.

The pressure with the legs and the feeling on the reins will depend on the type of horse: with the well-bred horse, which will always be more sensitive than a common-bred animal, the slightest movement of the legs and hands will be all sufficient to convey the wishes of the rider.

A. The hands through the reins to the mouth control the forehead of the horse, i.e. all that part of the horse before the saddle.

B. The legs control the quarters, i.e. all that part of the horse behind the saddle, by a downward and backward pressure behind the girths of either one or both legs, which will be applied according to the rider's requirements.

A and B are localities which should always be used simultaneously and in cohesion on the same or alternate sides. In turning, the left hand and right leg function in co-operation and vice versa.

C. This Aid Area is used by the rider for the application of (i) the Direct Rein, (ii) the Indirect Rein. (i) The Direct Rein is used when the rider is holding the reins in both hands, viz. in turning to the right the rider feels the right rein, at the same time supporting it with the left rein, i.e. pressing the near side of the horse's neck at Area C with the left rein. (ii) With the Indirect Rein, by which method the horse is turned when all the reins are in the left or bridle hand, as at polo, the rider to turn to the right carries all the reins across to the off side of the horse's neck, that is to the side to which he desires to turn. The near side rein will be taut and pressing against Area C, whilst the off side rein will be slack. To turn to the left, reverse the above instructions.

HALTING.

Next the rider wishes to bring his horse to a standstill, and does so by closing both legs with an even but firm pressure behind the girths (which will be instantly released when the horse responds by standing still) and with a feeling of tension on the reins, at the same time leaning slightly back in his saddle. This feeling on the reins will also be

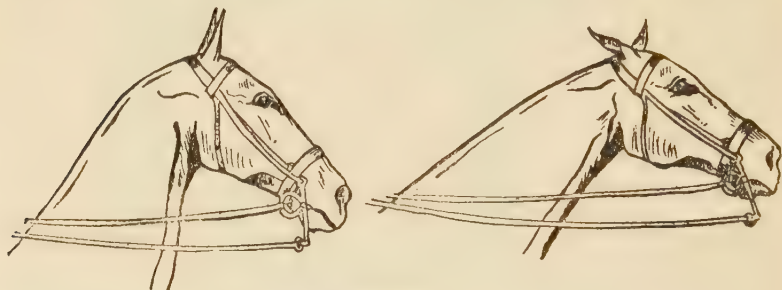


Diagram 3.

GOOD HEAD CARRIAGE

A. The head of a collected horse.

Well raised and bent at the poll. This horse is well up in his bit and his good head carriage denotes perfect balance.

BAD HEAD CARRIAGE

B. The head of an uncollected horse.

This low head carriage denotes bad balance and that the horse is leaning on his bit and "down on the hands." This bad head position is often the sign of a slovenly rider.

relaxed when the horse responds by halting, and the rider's body will then adopt the normal position. Thus at the walk we have seen the result of the proper co-ordination of the rider's hands and legs.

The rider should always endeavour to make his horse walk in a "collected" manner with good head carriage and stepping short and briskly; this can always be done by riding him up in his bridle by a pressure of the legs, which emphasises perfect

cohesion between the rider and his horse, and control.

The extended or "uncollected" walk is the gait adopted when riding for a distance or when hacking home from hunting. The horse can then be given a longer rein and allowed to carry his head as he pleases and to adopt a longer stride which will be more restful.

TURNING THE HORSE.

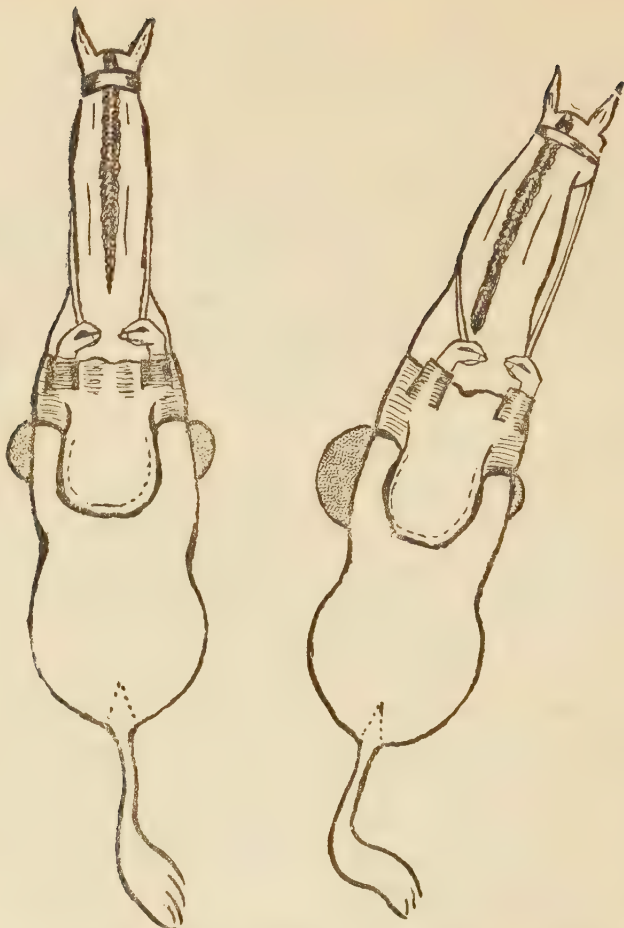
By the Direct Rein. The pupil having mastered the walk, with a good position in the saddle, and having a fair idea of controlling the horse on the straight should now learn how to turn the horse both to the right and left.

To turn to the right when the horse is stationary. The horse is standing "collected," and the rider wishes to turn him to the right. Feel the right rein and support it by bringing the left rein against the horse's neck (near side), at the same time closing both legs, using more pressure with the left leg behind the horse's girth.

To turn to the left reverse the above instructions, remembering to apply more pressure with the right leg.

Every care should be taken to keep the hands as stationary as possible, and on no account should they be separated from their correct positions just above the front arch of the saddle, keeping their distance of between four and five inches apart.

The closing of the "outer" leg, i.e. the leg on the far side of the way we want to turn, prevents the horse's haunches flying out, and the reason for applying the leg on the inside is to keep the horse



The dotted portions indicate the amount of leg pressure which should be used.

Correct.

Hands in the centre of the body collecting the horse with an even feeling of both reins prior to commencing to turn to the right.

All turns should be made on the haunches, and in order to do so correctly it is essential that the leg aids should be properly applied in co-operation.

Remember that in turning to the right on the haunches that the action of the left leg is to fix down the off hind and so prevent the hind-quarters from moving to the left. *Vice versa* in turning to the left.

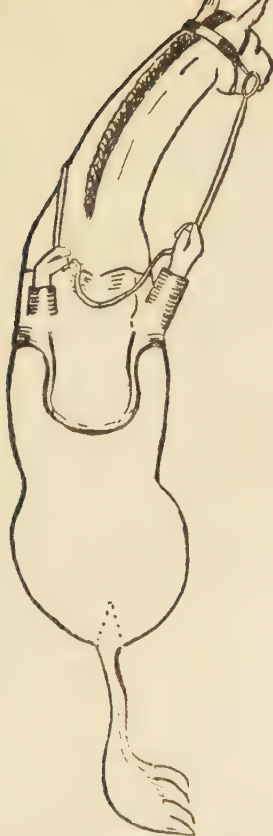
Correct.

A direct feeling of the right rein, supported by the indirect left rein, pressing against the near side of the neck. This correct method keeps the horse's neck straight from the shoulders, though his head should be inclined from the poll to the right. Note that the rider's hands have moved to the right but that they are not separated.

The rider is closing both legs with a firmer pressure of the left leg slightly drawn back, and he should lean his body slightly back and to the right. The horse in making this turn to the right correctly on his haunches pivots on his off hind-leg. To turn to the left, reverse the above instructions.

Diagram 4. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW TO ILLUSTRATE DIRECT AND INDIRECT REINING IN TURNING TO THE RIGHT

Showing the position of the hands in applying the Direct and Indirect Rein.



Wrong.

Here is the wrong method of turning to the right. The rider is wrenching his horse's head round which, apart from being wrong, is entirely unnecessary. Further, the rider is committing another fault in separating his hands.

The horse should not bend his head from the shoulders—his neck must be always a firm column extending from the shoulders with the bend being made at the poll only in the direction it is desired to turn to.

Furthermore, the rider is not applying the leg aids, consequently the horse's hind-quarters are about to swing out to the left and he will not make the turn by pivoting on his off hind-leg.

Application of the leg aids :

Remember that it is of the utmost importance to apply the aids in conjunction with each other. The hands, legs, and the movement of the rider's body, in order to distribute his weight correctly, should all co-operate. In this case the rider will close both legs with a firmer pressure of the left leg to prevent the hind-quarters from flying out to the left, and there will be an inclination of the seat to the right and slightly back. To turn to the left, reverse the above instructions.



Correct.

To illustrate the Indirect Rein.

Here the rider is pressing the near or left rein against the side of the horse's neck, simultaneously carrying the bridle or left hand across the horse's neck to the right without increased backward pressure. The result of this action is to cause the horse to throw its weight on the right shoulder to support himself and turn to the right. It is by means of the Indirect Rein that the horse is turned when all the reins are held in one hand. When the turn is completed the hand resumes its normal position over the front arch of the saddle.

up in his bridle. *All turns should be made on the haunches, therefore they must be kept under control.*

The rider's body should be inclined slightly back and in the direction of the side it is required to turn. When the horse has turned release the leg pressure and resume an equal feeling with both reins on the horse's mouth.

By the Indirect Rein. This method of turning is in advance of this chapter, being more complicated for the novice. However, the writer considers it advisable to explain briefly turning by means of the Indirect Rein, and to show it by illustration for comparison with the diagrams of the Direct Method.

The Indirect Rein is the method by which we turn a horse when all the reins are held in one hand. Turn to the right by the Indirect Rein :

Carry the left, or bridle hand (which should be holding all four reins), across the horse's neck to the right, or off side, simultaneously pressing the near side-reins against the near side of the horse's neck and apply a firm pressure of the left leg. The right rein will be slack throughout the turning movement.

To turn to the left reverse the above instructions, viz. carry the left hand over to the left or near side, pressing the right reins against the horse's off side neck and apply the right leg behind the girths. When the turn is completed the hand reverts to its correct position over the front arch of the saddle.

THE TROT.

When the novice has thoroughly understood the method for making the horse walk, turn, and halt

correctly, though naturally it cannot be expected that he can do so in any finished manner, he should learn to trot on a straight line. Trotting, however, must not be overdone at the initial stages as it demands too great a strain on the rider's legs which have not yet developed the riding muscles. It will depend on the pupil, his temperament, physique, and aptitude in learning to ride as to when trotting should be commenced. Towards the end of the second lesson is, with the average pupil, a very suitable time for learning to trot.

In the first attempts the beginner should not endeavour to rise, or force himself to rise, in the saddle, but should be content to jog along at "the bump," maintaining a firm pressure with the knees and keeping the heels down, and the ball of the foot resting on the stirrup-iron.

The beginner usually finds great difficulty in keeping the stirrups in this position as they invariably slip "home" under the instep or indeed more often he loses them altogether. However, as progress is made this difficulty will be overcome. Here again it is emphasised to keep the ball of the toe on the stirrup-iron and not adopt the "home" position because the former method fosters the correct "down heel" attitude.

It must be remembered that the rider is now beginning to develop riding muscles which have so far been in an embryo state, and that as they develop to strengthen his gripping power so the seat will be becoming more secure.

To trot from the walk, ease the reins and make an even and equal pressure with both legs behind the girths until the horse begins to trot. As soon

as the desired pace is achieved relax the pressure of the legs and feel the reins as required. With progress and more practice the novice should be attempting to rise and sink in the saddle to the horse's actions at this pace. Some individuals find difficulty in learning to rise or take some time before they acquire the correct movement; however, they will gradually get into the way of rising, and must not be discouraged by failure to rise in the first attempts to the horse's trot.

When rising in the saddle to the trot the rider must endeavour to rise from the knee grip, the stirrups facilitating the movement by fostering balance and firmness of the seat.

For short periods the beginner should ride without stirrups at both the walk and the trot, as this exercise will assist tremendously in giving a better balance and strengthening the riding muscles. When riding without stirrups at the trot lift up the stirrup-irons and place them across the horse's withers, because if they dangle down loose they are apt to bang against, and hurt, the inside of the rider's ankle bones.

THE CANTER.

The canter is the next pace after the trot, and at the canter the rider's seat differs from the seat at the trot, as there is no rising and the rider must endeavour to sit well down in the centre of the saddle and not bump up and down.

To make the horse canter in a straight direction feel the reins and apply the firm and backward pressure with both legs behind the girths. Instantly the horse breaks into the canter release the leg



Diagram 5. THE RIDER'S SEAT AT THE CANTER

Points to Notice.

The position of the rider is good. His seat is well down in the centre of the saddle with the body slightly inclined forward. He has a good firm knee grip with the lower part of the leg hanging free from a bent knee, and pliable, ready to apply the leg aids when required. The leg below the knee is slightly back with the heels well down.

The position of the rider's hands is good, being close to the body with the wrists well rounded. The rider has a nice length of rein, neither too short nor too long, but one which will ensure perfect control under any circumstances.

The horse has perfect head carriage, is well collected, and going well up in his bridle. The combination of the rider's "independent" seat and the horse's perfect balance guarantees complete control and free movement. The rider is "going with" or in rhythm with the horse's movement.

Man and mount are, therefore, in perfect harmony and unison, as they should be at this essentially collected pace of the canter.



Diagram 6. THE RIDER'S SEAT AT THE GALLOP

pressure. Whilst cantering the rider should endeavour to maintain :

- I. A firm and correct knee grip.
- II. To keep the heels down and toes up and the stirrup-leathers taut.
- III. The legs hanging down straight from the knee and pliable, i.e. ready to apply further leg pressure if required.
- IV. Elbows still, close, but not cramped, to the sides.
- V. To have the body free and supple from the hips upwards in order to move in rhythm with the motion of the horse.

The rider should attempt to canter at the fourth lesson. Particular importance should be attached to the length of the reins; they must not be too short else the body will be too far forward which will make the rider bump in the saddle and tend to displace the knee grip. On the other hand too long a rein will place the position of the rider "behind his horse" and will minimise his control over the animal.

Diagram 6. THE RIDER'S SEAT AT THE GALLOP

Note.

The rider's body is inclined forward and the seat is raised off the saddle, taking the weight off the horse's loins and thereby facilitating free action of the hind-quarters.

The weight of the rider's body is forward and is taken on the knees, thighs, and stirrups.

The rider's hands are low and on either side of horse's neck, maintaining a firm hold of the reins and the horse's head.

At the gallop, in view of the rider's forward position, the length of rein must be shortened.

Note rider's firm grip and taut stirrup-leathers, heels down and toes up, so ensuring a strong and effective seat, maintaining full control of the horse at full speed with his neck stretched.

By leaning forward the rider is reducing the element of wind resistance.

The canter is a collected pace and the rider must endeavour to keep the horse under control, otherwise it may develop into a gallop, a pace which should not be attempted until the novice has made a very definite improvement and can master the trot, and canter, and can control the horse at these paces.

THE GALLOP.

During the elementary stages in learning to ride this pace should not be attempted. It is a very exhilarating pace and naturally the more ambitious novice will be anxious to ride at the gallop. It is essential, however, that the pupil is fairly proficient at the trot and canter and can control the horse tolerably well before riding at the gallop.

To gallop, the rider has only to apply the pressure of the legs when at the canter (the strength of the pressure of the leg will depend on the type of horse entirely: a free-moving horse will only require a slight pressure in comparison with a rather vigorous pressure necessary for the “slug” type of animal), and shorten the reins in order to keep a continuous and firm contact with the horse’s mouth. The rider should incline his body forward and the bones of the seat should be raised slightly off the saddle. The gallop demands a strong and continual knee grip, for this pace the feet should be right “home” in the stirrups. The weight of the rider’s body is now forward and should be taken by the knees, thighs, and stirrups. The rider must keep his hands low and on either side of the horse’s neck slightly in front of the withers, maintaining a firm hold on the reins. The reason for leaning forward at the gallop

with the seat raised off the back of the saddle is to take the weight off the horse's loins, the weakest part of his anatomy, and thereby release his hind-quarters as much as possible for free movement.

At the extended gallop this is most essential as by taking off the weight from the horse's loins and bringing it to bear on the shoulders it allows the horse to bring his hind-legs as far forward as possible, which will increase his speed. Further, by leaning forward we reduce the element of wind resistance.

To pull the horse up lean back in the saddle and take a firmer feel on his mouth, lower the hands and apply both legs behind the girths and retain the pressure until he pulls up.

The rider's weight being now over the horse's loins, together with a strong application of both legs behind the girth which impedes free movement of the hind-legs, acts as a brake to the horse's action.

REINING BACK.

It is very necessary to learn how to rein back, as this movement is required in everyday riding. The rein back is constantly employed in opening and shutting of gates, or in extricating oneself out of a difficult position where space is too cramped to allow turning and it is impossible to ride forward.

Should we meet hounds on the road, and naturally desire to give them room to pass, and at the same time keep our horse's head towards the pack, we instantly employ the rein back to get the horse's hind-quarters into the hedge, in case he might kick.

No horse can be considered "handy" unless he

knows how to rein back instantly the rider gives the indications to do so.

To Rein Back.—With an even feeling on the horse's mouth bring the hands closer into the body and simultaneously lean slightly forward, and apply a firm and equal pressure with both legs behind the girths. It is very essential to get the horse to carry his head properly before commencing to rein back and, therefore, we must remember to send him up into his bit, by applying the aids before we start the movement. By the correct application of the legs to guide him, one can make the horse rein back in a straight line.

The method of reining back can be explained in a more simplified form by stages :

- I. Collect the horse by closing both legs and send him up in his bridle by an even feeling of the reins.
- II. Lean the body slightly forward in order to send the balance of weight on the horse's forehead, thereby easing the weight off the horse's loins and hocks.
- III. Next feel the horse's mouth with an even feeling of both reins, causing him to step back a pace at a time.

The tension on the reins must not be continuous throughout the movement ; it should be applied and relaxed for each step in order to make the horse step back one pace at a time, and not run back out of hand. The action of the rider's legs is to guide the hind-quarters, keep them straight, and prevent them from swinging round to a flank.

In reining back the pressure of the legs and

hands should never be constant, but must alternate with the movements of the horse.

When the horse reins back the requisite number of paces, he should be halted by relaxing the feeling of the reins, and by applying a firm and equal pressure with both legs behind the girth.

The rider must take care that the horse has good head carriage, his head must not be up in the air, nor should his nose be poked, and he should rein back in a collected manner.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

Use a quiet and well-trained horse which will answer readily to the leg in order to facilitate teaching the pupil the elementary aids.

When instructing the novice in the leg pressure be sure to emphasise the necessity for retaining the knee grip: difficulty will be experienced in teaching round-thigh'd and short-legged pupils the leg aids. When moving at all paces the rider's leg should always hang free from the knee down, i.e. it must be pliable, ready to apply the necessary aids when required, but see that it is steady and does not swing like a pendulum, particularly when at the trot.

Every endeavour should be made to get the pupil to keep his heels down, toes up and pointing to the front. Care should be taken not to fatigue the pupil by riding without stirrups; it must be borne in mind that the beginner's grip, however strong he may be in physique, is handicapped by not having the riding muscles developed. When trotting without stirrups see that they are crossed over the front arch of the saddle, otherwise they will

dangle down by the horse's sides and most probably hurt the rider's ankles, besides knocking against the horse's elbows. Particular importance should be paid to the size of the stirrup-irons for the rider's feet. On no account allow stirrups which are on the small size for the individual's feet to be used. They are most dangerous, and in the event of a fall may result in the novice being dragged. Again, too light stirrups are not advisable. The average weight stirrup-irons are the best, and should the rider “take a toss,” they invariably swing free from the feet with their weight.

Falls should be avoided ; they tend to undermine the beginner's nerve and shake his confidence. Gradually introduce riding with a very loose rein in order to teach the pupil not to rely on the horse's mouth for security in the saddle.

The instructor should always be mounted, and for the preliminary lesson in cantering, if it does not take place in a riding-school or *manège*, it is advisable to take the pupil on the leading rein in a field or paddock. Do not use a whip in the riding-school with beginners as it tends to upset them ; if their horse will not step out, ride round beside them with the pupil's horse next the wall and the instructor's horse's head in line with the pupil's legs.

Another method in teaching the trot when the beginner's control is weak is to ride parallel with the pupil (who is next to the wall) and grasp the slack of the pupil's reins. This will give confidence to the pupil. The instructor can always control the horse, and it does not interfere with the novice's hold or prevent him retaining both reins at equal



NEGOTIATING A DROP FENCE AT THE EQUITATION SCHOOL, WEEDON

Express Photos Ltd.

(See over)

Here we have a splendid example of a rider "going with" his horse over a drop fence. The horse is jumping with a beautiful freedom of action and with confidence. Note the forward position of the rider's body, also his firm knee grip and that his heels are well sunk. The rider is giving the horse his head, at the same time maintaining perfect control with a nice light feeling on the horse's mouth. There is perfect cohesion between man and mount, and the picture clearly demonstrates control, balance, grip, suppleness, and the highest standard in equitation.

This picture which shows a horse taking a jump from a collected canter should be compared with that depicting the field riding over Becher's Brook, in the Grand National, in order to see the difference between the different styles of riding which are adopted to meet the situation.

lengths as the instructor's hands will be in rear of the pupil's, holding the slack of the reins.

When turning the pupil must not separate the hands, and must be impressed with the necessity for being as inconspicuous as possible in the saddle from the initial stage. Most beginners have a tendency to emulate the driver at the steering-wheel of a car with his hands separated when they turn their horse.

The pupil is apt to become confused in the reining back lesson and it depends largely on the progress when this should be taught.

Exercises on the horse's back are a very excellent medium for giving confidence and improving the seat, viz. bending down in the saddle and touching the toes, maintaining the knee grip. Fold the arms and lie right back on the horse's croup keeping the knee pressure and the legs stationary hanging down by the girths. The head of the pupil's horse should be held during this exercise. The instructor should demonstrate everything first to his pupil or class on his own horse. In dealing with the paces, do not rush the pupil; he may be very nervous and not show it. Being on a horse's back for the first time it is a very novel experience. It may seem a very precarious position to the rider and the more precarious he feels the further away *terra firma* will appear.

CHAPTER VI

THE ADVANCED AIDS

THE ADVANCED AIDS.

IT can be seen from the preceding chapter how the rider applies the aids, and how their correct application will assist him in controlling and directing his horse. Every person who wishes to ride properly should understand the aids. Likewise every hack or hunter should be taught to understand these indications and act on them instantly. Not only does their correct application facilitate riding and give the rider more control over his horse, but they also promote a better understanding between the mount and the man. The horse who will not respond to the leg when opening or shutting a gate is a veritable nuisance, and this reflects on his owner, who either through ignorance or laziness has not taken the trouble to school his horse.

Every well-trained horse should know how to respond to the rider's indications given by his hands and his legs. One rarely goes out for a morning's ride without having to passage or rein back, as both these movements are continually required in the opening and shutting of gates.

The aids and their correct employment with the properly schooled horse make riding a far more pleasurable and interesting pastime, and one has

only to ride a well-schooled horse after a badly schooled one, to realise the importance of the aids, and how necessary it is that every horse should be taught to respond to these signals which instantly establish harmony between the rider and his mount.

Now the aids are divided into two categories :

- I. The Natural Aids : such as the hands, the legs, the distribution of the weight of the body, and the voice.
- II. The Artificial Aids : such as whips, martingales, nose-bands, and spurs.

DISTRIBUTION OF THE RIDER'S WEIGHT.

In the preceding chapter we have noted the influence of the hands and legs when properly applied in conjunction with each other, and how the trained horse responds to their application in perfect obedience.

Further it has been noted how in all changes of pace and direction the horse can be assisted by the distribution of the rider's weight by the movement of his body forward or backward, or to the right or left.

But the movement of the body as an aid should only be very slight and scarcely visible, any excessive movement of the body is wrong, as it affects the horse's balance. When turning it should suffice if the weight is placed a little more on one seat bone than on the other, which will cause the body to be slightly inclined with the horse in the direction he is moving.

For example, when riding a bicycle, in turning to the right one naturally inclines the body towards

the direction in which one is turning without any exaggerated movement, which would only tend to upset one's balance.

THE VOICE.

The voice is of great assistance in controlling a horse, and a quiet tone has a very soothing effect, and never fails to inspire a frightened horse with confidence both in and out of stables.

To extract full benefit from the voice it is necessary that the horse should know his rider. However, it is quite surprising how kindly even a most fractious animal will go for a strange horseman who talks in a soothing tone of voice.

A particular tone and word should be used to denote a particular movement, and the rider should get into the habit of saying, “Walk,” as he closes his legs, to give the indication to go forward. The voice facilitates quick response on the part of the horse, and when a word denoting obedience is uttered it should be given so as to emphasise what is required. For example, the word “walk” should be given “W-A-L-K,” in a slow drawling voice, and when it is required to halt, the word “Whoa” should be uttered in a sharp and crisp tone simultaneously as the rider closes both legs, feels the reins and brings the weight of his body slightly back.

THE ARTIFICIAL AIDS.

We now come to the artificial aids, which embrace the whip, martingales, nose-bands, and spurs.

The whip is an additional aid which should only be used if the horse does not obey the pressure of the leg alone ; as a means of punishment it should

be sparingly used, and with the greatest discretion. Sluggish horses require an occasional tap with a whip to keep them up in their bit, but to use the whip as a punishment should rarely be resorted to, and then only when dealing with a vicious horse. Horses that are bad-tempered will be improved by firm and kind treatment, whereas punishment has the effect of making them sullen and "nappy."

To use a whip on a horse which is frightened is a fatal mistake ; he should be coaxed and humoured, and with the correct application of the aids he will invariably go past the frightening element or in the direction he has refused to go, quietly. A frightened horse wants his confidence restored, and this can only be achieved by sympathetic handling on the part of his rider.

As martingales and nose-bands, and the various patterns and their uses are being fully explained in Chapter X, spurs come next under the heading of the artificial aids.

Spurs should only be used by the expert horseman. In the hunting-field they have to be worn as they constitute part of the correct kit, and a hunting-boot has a naked appearance without a spur.

For general riding they have become almost obsolete. It is a recognised fact that the well-trained horse should come up to his bit with a pressure of the legs, and to-day every rider is taught how to apply his legs correctly, which dispenses with the necessity for the use of spurs. When spurs are worn they should be blunt and short-necked, as otherwise they will only prevent the rider from applying the leg aids properly. In making use of

spurs the rider must remember not to open his thighs or move his body forward; the leg from the knee downwards only should move. Spurs on the heels of the novice are a constant source of danger.

CANTERING ON A DESIRED LEG.

The canter and the position of the rider at this pace have already been dealt with. We will now come to the striking off with a named leg leading, and it is essential that every rider should know how to make his horse lead with a desired leg. When the horse is at the canter one of his forelegs is always striking the earth in advance of the other; they do not strike the earth simultaneously, as some people seem to think. Horses if they receive no indication from the rider may sometimes strike off at the canter with the near foreleg leading, and sometimes with the off fore, and keep on leading with the same leg until they change of their own accord through fatigue, or when turning. A horse must always be leading with the leg on the same side as the direction in which it is turning, i.e. when turning or circling to the left the near fore should be leading, and when turning to the right the off fore should be leading, otherwise the horse will be “cantering false” and is quite likely to cross its legs and come down.

Now it is possible for the rider to make a horse lead with a desired leg by a correct application of the aids. For instance, we are riding round a riding-school or *manège* at the trot on the left rein (a horse is said to be on the left rein when he is moving round a riding-school on a left-hand circle, and on

the right rein when he is moving round on a right-hand circle) and it is desired to break into a canter with the correct leg which is in this case the near fore leading. Feel the right rein which will instantly incline the horse's head to the right or the wall of the riding-school, close both legs with a firmer pressure of the drawn back right leg to create impulsion to the canter.

When trotting round on the right rein we reverse the above rule. Before we attempt to break into the canter we must have our horse at the collected trot, which is attained by pressing him up in his bridle with both legs.

The reason for inclining the animal's head away from the leg on which it is desired to lead, is to facilitate a freer movement of that shoulder and leg.

The head and neck being inclined to the right causes the left shoulder to be more in advance of the right shoulder, and therefore induces the horse to lead with the near foreleg rather than with the off foreleg, the right shoulder therefore may be described as being slightly cramped at the commencement of the canter. Once the horse breaks into the canter, his head, neck, and body should be kept in the direction in which he is moving.

In the riding-school or *manège*, the correct place to break into the canter is about three horse-lengths before arrival at a corner. The fact of the nearness to the corner where he will have to turn say, to the left, will also induce the horse to strike off with his near fore leading.

When riding in the open and it is desired to break into a canter from a trot, the same instructions



Diagram 1. A HORSE GOING ROUND A MAN-
ÈGE ON THE LEFT REIN AND ABOUT TO
STRIKE OFF AT THE CANTER ON THE NEAR
FORELEG

Here the rider is feeling the right rein, in-
clining his body slightly back and to the
right, and applying a pressure with both legs,
the right leg the stronger.



Diagram 2. SHOWING A HORSE GOING ROUND
A MANÈGE ON THE RIGHT REIN AND IN THE
ACT OF STRIKING OFF AT THE CANTER ON
THE OFF FORELEG

Here the rider is feeling the left rein so as to release the horse's off shoulder for more freedom of action in order that he will be induced to lead with his off foreleg; the rider also inclines his body to the left and slightly to the rear and applies a pressure with both legs, with a firmer pressure of the drawn back left leg.

apply with regard to the application of the said, viz. we collect the horse and turn his head slightly away from the leg with which it is desired to lead, and apply the correct leg pressure.

CANTERING TRUE AND DISUNITED.

The term “true” means that the horse is cantering or galloping correctly when the leading foreleg and the leading hind-leg are on the same side. The term “disunited” means that the horse is cantering or galloping incorrectly, viz. when the leading foreleg and leading hind-leg are on opposite sides.

A horse must always be made to canter “true” and “united”; when he leads with the near fore, the near hind should likewise lead, and *vice versa*.

When a horse canters “disunited” he should be checked instantly and restarted.

The rider will at once realise the fact of the horse being “disunited” by the awkwardness of the movement.

TO CHANGE AT THE CANTER.

To change at the canter means changing the fore and hind-legs with which the horse is actually leading, and make him lead with the other legs. To change at the canter is a movement which is necessary when we wish to turn the horse in the opposite direction to the side on which leg the horse is leading with. For instance, if the horse is leading with the off fore, and it is desired to turn to the left, we must first get the horse to change and lead with his near foreleg.

First collect the horse and slightly check him, so as to get his hocks well under him, incline his head

to the right and cause him to change by a firm pressure of the drawn-back right leg ; at the same



Diagram 3. CANTERING TRUE

Note the leading foreleg and the leading hind-leg are on the same side.



Diagram 4. CANTERING DISUNITED

Note that the leading foreleg and the leading hind-leg are on opposite sides.

time the rider should lean slightly back and to the right.

It is essential to know how to change and lead

with the alternate forelegs (always remembering that the horse should be changed correctly, so as to be cantering “true” and not “disunited”), as this movement is constantly required, particularly in the *manège* should we find ourselves going round with the wrong leg leading, or “on the wrong leg” or “cantering false” as it is termed in equitation parlance. Again, when making a figure of eight it is absolutely essential to change in the centre and strike off with the opposite foreleg in order to complete the second loop of the figure, so as to have the near foreleg leading which is nearer to the centre of the circle.

If it is desired to change from the near fore and near hind leading to the off fore and off hind, the aids as described for changing the lead from the off fore to the near fore are reversed.

THE FLEXIONS.

The flexions are movements which the properly trained horse makes by bending his neck at the poll. There are two kinds of flexions, direct and lateral.

When the horse bends his neck at the poll and gives his lower jaw to the feeling of the curb-reins, it is called the direct flexion. When he turns his head to the side bending his neck again at the poll to the feeling of the curb-reins it is called the lateral flexion. A horse cannot have good head carriage unless he flexes his neck properly, and without good head carriage a horse cannot be said to be properly balanced.

The term “the flexions” is, therefore, derived from the movements which are those of flexibility of the horse’s neck.

THE PASSAGE.

The words "passage" or "passaging" are terms used to describe a lateral movement by which the horse moves sideways to a flank keeping his neck

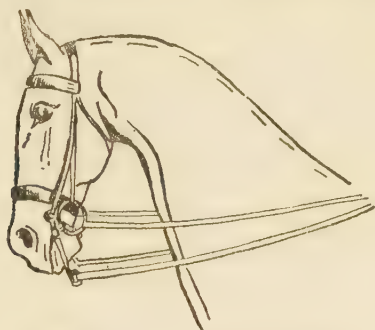


Diagram 5. DIRECT FLEXION



Diagram 6. LATERAL FLEXION

and body parallel with the object from or towards which he is moving.

Every properly schooled horse knows how to passage to either the right or the left flank. This movement is constantly required, particularly at gates, and the novice must realise the importance of being able to passage.

In the passage, the horse's body should be kept at right angles to the direction in which he is moving, being inclined only just sufficiently in that direction to enable him to cross his legs.

To Passage to the Right.—The rider must first collect the horse before attempting to commence the passage, and he should be sitting square in his saddle. Feel the horse's mouth with the right rein, and at the same time press the left rein against the horse's neck (in this case the left rein is known as the supporting rein). Simultaneously apply a firm pressure with the left leg to cause him to move in a direction parallel to the side of the school or *manège*.

Throughout the passage the rider should be able to see the cheek of the horse on the side towards which he is moving; when passaging to the right, therefore, the rider should be able to see the off side cheek, and must take care to have the horse's neck and body in a straight column. The inclination of the horse's head is made only from just behind the poll, never from the shoulder. The action of the rider's right leg is to support the movement by keeping the horse up in his bit by a slight pressure and to prevent any tendency to move backwards or from swerving.

When passaging correctly, the forelegs and hind-legs move on parallel lines.

In passaging to the right the horse will be placing his near foreleg in front of his off foreleg, and his near hind-leg in front of his off hind-leg.

To passage to the left reverse the above instructions.

CIRCLING.

Circling is a splendid exercise for the novice, as it fosters improvement in balance and grip. The circles should be made first at the walk in the riding-school or *manège*, then at the trot, and then at the canter.

Circling should take place in the corner of the riding-school and as the rider improves so should the circle be gradually reduced in size until the horse makes such a small circle that he almost turns about on his haunches at the canter.

CONTROLLING A HORSE.

The novice should now possess a rudimentary knowledge of the aids, and should have attained a firmer seat in the saddle. It depends entirely on the individual, on his aptitude and confidence, as to when he is fit to control a horse properly in the open. The time it takes to learn to ride cannot be stipulated; some pupils have more aptitude and a greater incentive to learn to ride than others. Even if the novice has attained a really firm seat and can ride an average horse properly in the open and over fences, he should not attempt, or volunteer, to ride a horse which he considers is too difficult for him to manage.

Control of an excitable or high-spirited horse is, therefore, a subject which is hardly likely to come within the sphere of the novice. Temperamental and restive horses should only be ridden by horsemen.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

However much grit he may possess, the novice should not be asked or allowed to ride a horse which

is a puller, excitable or restive, and difficult to manage, or known to have any vice.

Beginners should only ride horses with good mouths and manners, and riding a pulling horse in his early riding career will only spoil the rider's hands, and should he continually ride pulling horses, he undoubtedly will get into the bad habit of holding on by the reins, which will be difficult to eradicate, and which will prevent the formation of good hands which are based on the correct position, flexibility of the wrists and suppleness of the fingers, which are required for maintaining a nice even “ give-and-take ” contact with the horse's mouth. Again, no novice should be asked to ride a difficult horse, as it may only destroy his nerve, particularly as he does not possess a firm seat in the saddle. It must be remembered that an insecurity of seat and a lack of confidence are only natural with the novice, and that the horse which possesses the faculty of intuition quickly realises these deficiencies on the part of the rider, and accordingly plays up.

The rider with a loose seat cannot prevent himself from hanging on by the reins, or “ jobbing ” the horse's mouth, which is bound to react on any horse bar a riding-school animal or a confidential hack.

As the novice progresses, he should be gradually given opportunities for riding many different horses, and those which are awkward, and which require a little more riding, but on no account should a pupil be given an animal to ride if there is any doubt as to his capability of keeping it under control. The methods for dealing with pullers and with horses

which lean on their bridles and have bad head carriage will be dealt with fully in Chapter X on Bitting.

Without doubt the best method of teaching equitation is by demonstration on the part of the instructor, and imitation on the part of the pupil : this is particularly the case in teaching the aids, which to the novice will appear very complicated. Care should be taken not to confuse the pupil. The aids should be taught in gradual stages, and at the commencement those for striking off at the canter on one particular foreleg should be thoroughly mastered before any attempt is made to teach striking off on the other foreleg.

There should not be any over-accentuation of the application of the aids. Exaggerated movements must be avoided, either with the hand or the leg. With the well-bred, sensitive horse the slightest movement of the legs is sufficient to convey the wishes of the rider. Again, movements of the body should be slight and scarcely visible ; the centre of gravity of the rider being much higher than that of the horse, the smallest movement has a great effect on the horse's balance.

CHAPTER VII

SIDE-SADDLE

THE SIDE-SADDLE SEAT.

RIDING side-saddle is without doubt the correct method for a woman, and every woman who desires to exploit the art of horsemanship as far as it lies within her power, must aim at proficiency in the side-saddle rather than the equivalent degree of skill astride, for the following reasons, which outweigh those which can be mustered for the cause of the astride-seat *versus* the side-seat to an overwhelming degree :

I. The average woman can never attain the same degree in strength of knee or thigh grip as a man, which is the all-important factor in acquiring a firm seat, because anatomically she is at a disadvantage.

Handicapped, therefore, in her conformation, which lacks the flat thigh and bony knee-joint so characteristic of the structure of the man, and which is so essential for riding astride in order to apply the necessary strength of grip, the side-saddle is also, for physiological reasons, the better seat for the rider's health.

II. Side-saddle gives a far greater degree of firmness of seat to a woman than she could ever possibly

attain astride, and firmness means security of seat, which is the bedrock of that invaluable quality for the rider—"hands."

Women have lighter hands than men, and the lightness is fostered by the side-saddle; consequently horses usually go very kindly for a lady riding side-saddle; in fact it is often most noticeable how much better a horse will go for a good woman rider than he will for a man of equivalent skill in the saddle. Undoubtedly a woman has more sympathy, and a greater faculty of understanding in her make-up, which help enormously in getting on with horses and acquiring horse instinct, and she depends on persuasive, rather than on domineering methods.

Thus she makes up for her lack of physical strength by exploiting the element of what might be called "equine tact." The Indian horseman, who has few superiors, possessing all the features necessary for equestrian skill in litheness, suppleness, and grace in the saddle, rightly argues: "God has made the horse strong, and I am a weak man; therefore I do not wrestle with the horse by force, but coax him."

The majority of lady riders belong to the same school of thought, which is an exceedingly sound one.

It is acknowledged that the side-saddle is better for the horse's mouth, making as it does the rider's seat more independent of the hands, thereby minimising the chances of the animal being "jobbed" which is so often the case when an astride-rider is "left behind" over a fence and retains her seat by holding on by the reins. A light

feeling on the horse's mouth, and a nice liberty of rein, which is a feature with the side-saddle exponent, will amply counterbalance the extra weight which the horse has to carry by the side-saddle. Nothing irritates, upsets, and consequently fatigues a horse more than interference and roughness with his mouth, and therefore the adept will be sufficient compensation for the extra weight entailed by a side-saddle.

A good woman side-saddle will invariably ride straighter than her astride sister in the hunting-field.

III. The side-saddle has another advantage, as it makes it possible for quite a light-weight to ride a really big strong horse, giving security of seat and therefore greater control, whereas the same woman, however well she rode astride, could not help being thrown about and over-fatigued in endeavouring to maintain contact with her saddle; in other words her position might be likened to that of a “pea on a drum.” Again she would run the risk of being jumped off.

IV. At the majority of Horse Shows in the British Isles, particularly at the International Horse Show at Olympia, at Richmond and at the Royal Dublin Horse Show, the astride-seat for ladies is banned for showing purposes.

V. Last, though possibly not least, the side-saddle is the most decorative, dignified, and graceful method, and pleases the male eye, which prefers the ultra-feminine woman to the type which emulates the male in attire or atmosphere.

THE ASTRIDE-SEAT.

Riding astride became the vogue immediately after the Great War; in fact it was one of the aftermaths of the war, caused to a great extent by the number of women who had been employed in the Army Remount Depôts (where they adopted the cross-seat which was more practical for the type of work) continuing to do so afterwards in the hunting-field to influence those about to commence riding to learn the astride method.

Hack and hunting stable proprietors strongly advocated riding astride, and continue to do so, because a bad rider astride is less liable to give a horse a sore back than a correspondingly bad rider in a side-saddle.

Again, side-saddle is more troublesome, as it entails schooling the horse in the saddle beforehand, which demands that the proprietor himself, or his deputy, should ride side-saddle.

Riding schools likewise condemn the side-saddle, as it requires a competent instructor who is capable of teaching side-saddle riding, and there are comparatively few instructors who can give instruction in this seat.

It is a fact that teaching side-saddle is far more tiring for the horse, as the novice will be ill-balanced, and also the risk of a sore back is far greater from the novice side-saddle than from the novice astride.

Side-saddle admittedly demands more expenditure on the wardrobe, as a habit if built as it should be by an expert habit-maker, is an expensive garment; likewise a side-saddle is more costly than

an astride, and again it demands more careful fitting for the horse's back than the cross-saddle.

The best-known and most satisfactory maker of side-saddle habits is Busvine of Brook Street.

It may be argued that a woman astride is handier than in a side-saddle encumbered by a habit. However, it is remarkable how handy women are to-day side-saddle, and with the growing tendency on the part of the fair sex to aim at a higher standard of proficiency in equitation than formerly, and to have better-mannered horses, which will stand properly for mounting and dismounting, and are well schooled in opening and shutting gates, one rarely notices a lady in difficulties riding side-saddle.

It is quite remarkable how the side-saddle has returned to favour within the last five seasons, particularly in big galloping and jumping countries like the Shires, owing to the fact that it is recognised as the most practical and workmanlike method.

The writer has two photographs before him culled from daily papers which depict the opening meet of the Woodland Pytchley and the Bramham Moor Hunt on Boxing Day. The former shows fourteen lady followers in the foreground, only one of whom is riding astride, and the latter picture shows fourteen lady followers, all of whom, including the Princess Royal, are riding side-saddle.

However, in very hilly terrain, such as that encountered with the Devon and Somerset Stag-hounds, the astride-seat is more practical and preferable for the horse, as in the constant scrambling up and down hills he is less likely to incur a “ scalded ” back or “ wrung ” withers from the

friction of the cross-saddle than he will from the side-saddle, and also it facilitates the rider to nurse her horse by jumping on and off in order to lead him up and down the steep gradients of the coombs.

INFLUENCE OF THE RIDER'S STANDARD ASTRIDE.

The writer advocates all girls learning to ride side-saddle at about fourteen, irrespective of the standard of their proficiency astride, or whether they have ever ridden before. The reason that this age is selected is due to the fact that the average girl will have outgrown her pony at this age, and she will no doubt be about to be promoted to a horse, and most ponies are too small to take the average side-saddle which always has a tendency to dwarf a pony or cob.

Again, should the already proficient astride rider continue to ride astride up to sixteen or seventeen, she will have become too accustomed to astride methods, and will probably show a decided disinclination to make a change. Again, the question of kit materialises, and should she make the change at seventeen she will probably be in possession of her grown-up astride clothes.

The longer the girl continues to ride astride, particularly if she has reached a good standard of horsemanship, the less likely she will be to take to the side-saddle.

The grown-up novice should commence straight-away side-saddle.

To learn to ride side-saddle, the novice should place herself in the hands of a competent instructor; failing that she cannot do better than get a friend

who rides well side-saddle to give her advice, and show her the correct position, and endeavour to imitate her.

THE RIDER'S SEAT, POSITION OF BODY, HANDS, LEGS, AND FEET.

In learning to ride side-saddle, the novice must aim at attaining ultimately a nice firm seat, which will be comfortable, and which will give her a natural and graceful poise.

The rider must sit up straight, looking directly between the horse's ears, with her weight evenly distributed in the saddle.

The shoulders must be square; beginners have a tendency to round their shoulders, and invariably carry their right shoulder more forward than their left, and at first it is a good plan to adopt a slightly exaggerated forward position of the left shoulder, as there will always be an inclination for it to move back too much with the embryo horsewoman.

The elbows should be close to the sides, comfortably close—avoid any rigidity.

The position of the hands and wrists, and the method of holding the reins will be exactly the same as that described for the astride-seat in Chapters III and IV, but it should be stated that the side-saddle necessitates a longer rein, and that the hands will be held slightly higher than they would be astride, owing to the fact that the side-saddle seat is a higher one than the astride due to the shape of the saddle and the position of the rider's right thigh.

THE GRIP.

The grip on the side-saddle is dependent on the right leg over the pommel, which is assisted by the left leg coming up into contact with the lower or "leaping pommel" as it is called, when required. Care must be taken that the right knee is clear of the upright pommel, and that it does not come immediately under the knee-joint, which will prevent the right leg hanging straight down, and so deprive the rider of one of her means of gripping for the right side of the right leg should be pressed close on the saddle against the horse's shoulder.

The right leg hangs straight down, and the right foot should be in a natural position.

The left leg should adopt the same position as that for the astride-seat, with the exception that the stirrup-leather will be slightly longer for the side-saddle. The inside of the knee should be close against the saddle, with the leg hanging straight down from the bent knee, and pliable, i.e. ready to apply the leg aid when required. The heel should be well sunk and the toe should be up, and turned to the front.

Instead of concentrating on trying to keep the left toe inwards or to the front, try rather to remember to keep the left heel sunk and turned outwards away from the horse's side. Should one aim at turning the toe in, one is inclined to cause the ankle to be twisted, or to be in an unnaturally cramped and uncomfortable position. If, on the other hand, the heel is kept down and outwards, the whole leg will come round into the correct

position with the inside of the knee against the saddle.

To attain the correct foot position which is so very important, not only from being the correct



Diagram 1. THE CORRECT SEAT

The left leg is the same as when riding astride. Note that the left thigh is not pressed up flush with the lower pommel and that the right knee is clear of the upright pommel. Note the left foot with the toe up and a sunk heel.

one, but also from the point of view of looks and style, ride with the stirrup-iron immediately under the ball of the foot, and do not adopt the "home" method, which is under the instep, until one has got a good foot position, and can maintain it at all paces. The "home" method is more practical for

hunting and jumping, but it deprives one of the elasticity of the ankle-joint. Avoid pressing with one's weight on the stirrup-iron (see Diagram 1).

The left thigh should not be pressed against the lower or "leaping" pommel; it should be just



Diagram 2. A BAD POSITION

Here the upright pommel comes immediately under the right knee, which pushes the leg and foot too far forward, thereby depriving the rider of one of her means of gripping which she should be able to do with the right leg against the saddle. The stirrup-leather is too short, causing the rider's left thigh to be flush with the lower pommel. The position of the left foot is bad with the toe down and heel raised. See Diagram 1 for comparison.

near enough to be able to apply the extra grip when required. This the good rider will do automatically and instinctively when the horse shies or bucks, and when he is pulling or galloping downhill, and in jumping. Thus the grip on the side-saddle is a pressure of the right leg down to meet the upward

pressure of the left leg, but the foundation of the grip is the upward pommel.

It has been known for the lower or "leaping" pommel to break, and the writer vividly recalls the feat of a very accomplished horsewoman, who rode



Diagram 3. A BAD POSITION

Right leg and foot shoved too far forward. Left leg from the knee incorrectly drawn back. The left leg should hang straight down from a bent knee and pliable, i.e. ready to apply the leg aid when required. Again, it should not be drawn up flush with the pommel unless when applying the grip.

for some miles across a very stiff bit of country minus her lower pommel.

THE STIRRUP AND ITS ADJUSTMENT.

Care should be taken in adjusting the stirrup-leather to the correct length. It must not be on

the short side, otherwise the left thigh will be forced up under the "leaping" or lower pommel, which will prevent the rider attaining a supple or comfortable seat, which is the ultimate objective.

It is always advisable to ride with a safety stirrup side-saddle. The safety bar on the saddle, to which the leather is attached and kept in position with a spring device, is preferable to the actual safety stirrup-iron.

MOUNTING SIDE-SADDLE.

Ladies are becoming much more accomplished in mounting and dismounting, and it is advisable that every side-saddle rider should master this performance, which seems at first somewhat difficult and intricate, in case of an emergency arising. In the hunting-field there is no accommodating block to mount from should one "take a toss," and there may not be any one near to give a helping hand.

Here is where the well-mannered horse, which has been trained to stand for mounting—and all horses can be trained to stand for mounting even in the exciting atmosphere of "the chase"—will be so invaluable.

In such an emergency the rider should mount like a man, and then throw the right leg over the horse's withers. This movement will be hampered by the habit-skirt, but it is surprising how dexterously women can accomplish this movement after practice.

The tall woman has an advantage over the short woman, who will experience difficulty in mounting a big horse. However, there is usually a bank from which one can mount, or failing this, let down the

stirrup-leather as many holes as it will go. For her convenience, confidence, and feeling of independence, every side-saddle woman should be able to mount unaided, and every horseman should know how to put a lady rider up.

There is a great knack in giving a side-saddle rider a “leg-up,” which depends on correct timing and the manner in which the rider’s left foot is held. The most practical method is for the man to fold his hands together, across which the lady can place her foot (never forgetting to put his left arm through the reins to prevent the horse moving forward).

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

It is essential that the instructor should be able to ride tolerably well side-saddle before he or she endeavours to give instruction, in order that the pupil’s difficulties may be appreciated, and in order to teach by demonstration and imitation, which is the essence of instruction in equitation.

The first lessons must be devoted entirely to the correct position, and maintaining the position.

A quiet horse should be used, and one which is thoroughly used to the side-saddle, and for the first two lessons the horse should not go out of a walk. Should the pupil have no experience astride, it will be necessary for her to learn the correct method of holding the reins and how to guide the horse, in which case it may be necessary to remain at the walk for the first four lessons. No advantage will be gained by forcing methods, and a good position must be attained at the walk before commencing to trot. Premature trotting or cantering

may get the pupil into a bad position or a bad habit, which will be difficult to eradicate.

For instruction the habit-skirt should not be worn, as it prevents the instructor from seeing if the correct position of the legs is being maintained.

Always check any tendency to grip with the upright pommel immediately under the right knee; the rider should sit forward enough to clear the pommel by at least one inch.

In order to get the rider into a good position, stand well behind the horse, and get the rider to sit straight and square in her saddle, so that her whole position from the seat upwards would be identical with a correct astride-seat, and suggesting that her right leg was down on the off side of the horse.

When the trotting and cantering lessons are commenced, pay particular attention to the position of the right shoulder, which is always inclined to come forward and thereby throw the rider into a skew-wise position. Likewise the left leg is inclined to come back with beginners—a



Diagram 4.

THE CORRECT SEAT

Here the rider is sitting square on the horse's back. The position from the seat upwards is identical with an astride-seat, and one can imagine that the rider's right leg is hanging down the horse's offside.

fault which also causes the left toe to point downwards.

The canter is a very good pace for fostering a nice easy style, and helps a novice to learn how to go in rhythm with her horse. To foster this rhythm one can describe the seat at the canter as a sliding one without sacrificing any element of grip. Grip is essential and the novice must first learn how to grip in order to keep her balance.

The novice, side-saddle or astride, has to learn how to grip to maintain balance. This does not mean to imply that the rider is at all times exerting her or his riding muscles in order to grip—this would be too tiring. The skilled horsewoman and horseman ride to a great extent by balance, and only apply the grip in anticipation to maintain their balance.

Therefore, as balance is being gradually acquired, there will be also a gradual relaxation of the grip, and riding will become less of an effort.

CHAPTER VIII

JUMPING

ELEMENTARY JUMPING.

NO hard and fast rule can be laid down as to when the first lesson in jumping may be given, as it depends entirely on the standard attained by the individual pupil. Some beginners may be allowed to jump over a small obstacle in the *manège*, or riding-school, towards the end of their second week's instruction, whereas backward and nervous pupils may not be fit for a jumping lesson until the fourth or fifth week.

The two important factors to be considered before the pupil can be allowed to ride at an obstacle are as follows :

- I. The degree of the pupil's confidence or morale in the saddle.
- II. The standard of security of the seat which is based on the combination of balance and grip, which only comes with experience and practice.

THE MISTAKE OF PREMATURE JUMPING.

But it can be definitely stated that under no circumstances should jumping be considered until the novice has reached the stage when he can ride tolerably well at all paces, has a reasonably firm

seat for a beginner, and is capable of controlling the horse. The notion which some instructors have of hastening the jumping lessons in order to make pupils grip is entirely wrong and is most injudicious, as it usually results in a broken nerve or a distaste for jumping altogether which should be fostered amongst pupils.

On the other hand, jumping when carried out with discretion, and when the time is ripe for the lesson, is excellent for the novice, as it will assist him to strengthen his seat, demanding as it does full employment of his powers of balance, together with a reliance on his knee-grip.

Nothing rattles nervously inclined pupils more than the prospect of jumping, and though every encouragement should be given to make those pupils jump whom the instructor considers are advanced sufficiently to merit embarking on this stage, jumping should be entirely voluntary on their part. More harm than good will result from rushing the pupil towards the initial jumping stage and the chances are that he will not concentrate on doing what he is told, but merely be overcome with the fear of being given a fall and accordingly develop a bad style which will be hard to correct, or if not, “take a toss,” which will do an inestimable amount of damage, for falls must be avoided as they retard the pupil’s progress.

THE VALUE OF JUMPING.

It should be remembered that jumping is a very essential phase in elementary equitation as (a) it will assist the pupil to acquire a firm and “independent” seat, i.e. a seat so combined with

balance and grip that the rider is completely independent of his hands and arms ; further (b) it will teach the pupil the full use and the value to be derived by the correct use of hands and legs.

The first jumping lesson should be given in the *manège* over a good thick pole, which should be raised about six inches off the ground, that is sufficiently high to make the horse realise that it is a jump.

The pole should be at right-angles to the wall with a wing placed at the open end. This will prevent the horse running out, which should be avoided. At this preliminary stage the jump should not be placed in the centre of the school, as no beginner is capable of guiding the horse straight at the jump and at the same time being in the most suitable position for negotiating the jump. Everything must be concentrated on getting the pupil to sit correctly and comfortably, and carry out the instructions regarding the position of his body without having to consider or anticipate faulty action on the part of the horse.

Jumping should always be taught in a confined space, *manège*, or small paddock, and not in an open field where there is a possible chance of the horse getting away after he has negotiated the obstacle.

Jumping should take place at the end of the hour's lesson, when the pupil will have got well down into his saddle, and the horse selected for the pupil should be one which jumps freely without fuss, and which will canter up steadily to the jump and pop over easily. The collected canter is the correct pace at which to approach the jump. On

no account should a horse which is at all inclined to rush his fences be used.

If the horse is being ridden in a double-bit the curb-chain must be removed, or the curb or bit-reins discarded and knotted up close to the horse's neck, in order to avoid any sudden jar on the horse's mouth during the process, leaving the pupil with the bridoon-rein.

INSTRUCTION BY DEMONSTRATION.

Demonstration is without doubt the best method of teaching jumping, and for learning the correct way to jump; moreover it will emphasise that (*a*) jumping is anything but a difficult exercise if the pupil carries out the instructions and applies the knowledge he has already been taught; (*b*) it will bring out how essential it is for the man to be nicely in unison with his mount and the success which can be obtained with so little effort on the part of horse and rider; (*c*) how the rider is able to control the horse by means of his hands and legs; and (*d*) that a rider's seat can become so secure as to be entirely independent of his hands and arms (to bring out this last fact the instructor should jump fences with his arms folded.)

THE RIDER'S SEAT OVER FENCES.

Before jumping the pupil must learn that as he is approaching the fence his body should be upright, if anything, inclined to be slightly forward as it is at the canter, and that his seat should be well down into the saddle with the knees gripping, and with the heels well pressed down, and with the stirrup-leathers taut. The rider's seat is correct when he



Diagram 1. "THE CORRECT SEAT AT THE TAKE OFF."

The rider is going with his horse in order to be in complete unison throughout the jump.

Note the rider has raised his seat off the saddle (the degree depends on the height of the obstacle), the greater part of his weight being taken on his knees and thighs, gaining assistance from his stirrup-irons to strengthen his seat.

Note that the knee is bent and the leg below the knee pliable and ever ready in case of necessity to apply the leg aids.

The heels are well pressed down.

The rider is keeping his hands low and at the same time maintaining contact with the horse's mouth by a nice even feeling on the bit, at the same time giving him liberty of rein.

Here the bridle assists but in no way hampers the horse, which should be before the rider's mind. This sketch denotes perfect liaison between man and his mount.

balances himself from his knee and thigh grip, gaining assistance from the stirrups to strengthen his seat and for comfort.

As the horse takes off before the jump the rider should lean the upper part of his body forward (the degree will depend on the height of the jump), and tighten his grip, at the same time he should learn to keep his hands low down on the horse's withers and allow them to go forward easily with the horse as he is landing, so as not to interfere with the horse's mouth.

The reasons for inclining the body forward at the identical moment when a horse takes off before a jump, are twofold :

(1) The rider must assist the horse by taking his weight forward on to the forehand ; if the rider does not lean forward at the psychological moment to be “ with the horse ” he will impede the animal's propulsion with a dead weight in the saddle. This will react on the horse's loins, the weakest part of a horse's anatomy, and will prevent free movement behind the saddle ; in order to facilitate description, a rider's seat which is incorrect in sitting back on the horse when he rises at a jump is equivalent to a brake as it reduces the action of the hind-quarters.

(2) The result of not being in the correct position as the horse takes off, will be that as the horse lands on the “ alight ” side, he will assuredly be “ jobbed ” in the mouth by the inexperienced rider in order to retain his seat as he has now been “ left behind ” his horse, and further as the rider has not been in harmony with his mount he is liable to a sensation of shock as the horse lands on the “ alight ” side or as his forelegs strike the ground.

The action of a horse "taking off" before a jump is a spring which is both a vertical and a forward movement and, therefore, it stands to reason that



Diagram 2.

A bad position which ensures that the rider will be "behind his horse" throughout the jump. The rider's seat is a dead weight on the horse's loins (his weakest part), which will prevent free action behind the saddle.

The rider's legs below the knee are too far forward and, therefore, are not in a position to be pliable in order to apply the aids. The rider's hands are far too high and he has a dead tug on the horse's mouth. This position will result in a bad jump and undoubtedly the horse getting severely "jobbed" in the mouth when landing, as throughout the jump the rider will be holding on by the reins to maintain his balance and seat. In contrast to Diagram 1 there is an entire lack of liaison between man and his mount depicted in this illustration.

if the rider is not "going with" his horse as it springs up and forward by inclining his body forward at the correct moment he cannot be in unison with his horse at any time throughout the jump.

THE THREE PHASES IN JUMPING.

There are three phases in the jump, viz.:

- I. The take off, when the horse is leaping forward off his hocks or hind-legs.
- II. The culminating point, when the horse is stretched mid-air right over his fence.
- III. The descent, when the horse is landing on his forelegs.

Therefore, to be in harmony with his horse and to ride correctly over a fence the pupil must learn to lean forward to counteract the “ up and forward ” movement of the horse for the first and all-important phase.

At the second phase in the jump the rider will be automatically adapting himself to the normal position, i.e. upright in the saddle, which will have been obtained without any effort or movement on the part of the rider, but which will come naturally with the momentum of the horse through the air, and there is no necessity whatsoever for the rider to execute any intentional backward movement. His position will be naturally adjusting itself to the horse's movement caused by his faculty of balance together with the application of knee and thigh grip.

During the third phase when the horse is at the angle of descent the body will have completely resumed its original and ordinary upright position, that is vertical to the horse's back, without any movement or attempted movement on the part of the rider, so that when the horse's hind-legs have



JUMPING: BECHER'S BROOK IN THE GRAND NATIONAL, 1924

Sport & General Press Agency, Ltd.

(See over)

The field taking Becher's Brook first time round in the National of 1924 won by Master Robert (R. Trudgill up) with Fly Mask (No. 13), who seems to be "pitching" badly, second, and Silvo (No. 4), who can be seen farthest away jumping splendidly, third. Master Robert was an Irish hunter who had worked in a plough in Ireland before going into training; his win was all the more remarkable as he was under treatment for lameness for some time before the race.

The measurements of this very formidable drop fence at Aintree are as follows: built up with spruce to 4 feet 10 inches high it is 3 feet 8 inches in breadth with a natural brook on the far side of 5 feet 6 inches wide, further, it has a very pronounced drop on the "alight" side where it measures 6 feet 4 inches in height. Note how the jockeys are leaning well back so as to balance their mounts and keep them under control. In view of the speed at which horses approach these big fences, which is necessary in order to get sufficient momentum to carry them over, the jockeys lie back particularly when riding over this actual drop fence so as to lighten the horses' forehead as much as possible and to prevent them overbalancing which is the danger when landing at so steep an angle.

This picture shows Sergeant Murphy, No. 6 (Hogan), who was piloted to victory in the previous year's National by that intrepid horseman Captain Bennet, who was killed shortly afterwards at Wolverhampton Steeplechases; Eureka II, No. 9 (Robson), Fly Mask, No. 13 (Moylan), Winnall, No. 16 (Donnelly) and Silvo, No. 4 (Goswell).

reached the ground and he is about to resume his stride the rider's body is the same as if he were riding at the canter.

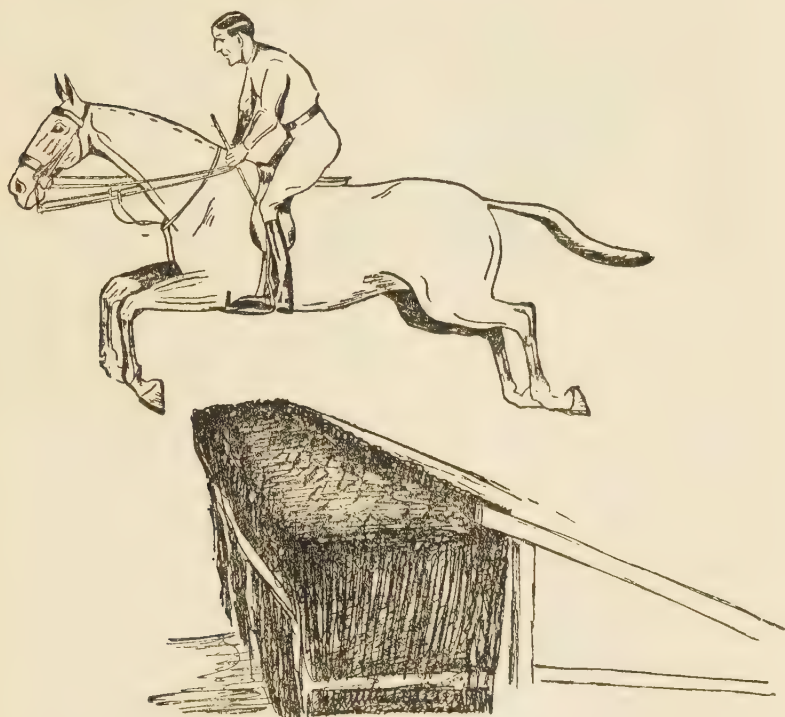


Diagram 3.

Here is the second phase in the jump. As it is a fair-sized spread fence the rider is helping his horse by relieving him of all possible weight behind the saddle until the last moment. It is a good, well-balanced seat and the rider's poise is excellent. The position of the horseman's hands is admirable. He is giving the horse a nice length of rein, at the same time maintaining perfect control. The horse carries his head well and is perfectly balanced. The manner in which the horse jumps denotes that he is in perfect harmony with his pilot.

POSITION AND ACTION OF THE HANDS, ARMS, AND LEGS.

It is absolutely essential that the rider's hands should conform to the horse's action of extending

its head and neck when jumping, and therefore the rider must learn to stretch out his arms from the shoulders (keeping his hands low down on the withers) in order not to hamper the horse in any way, but, at the same time maintaining contact with the horse's mouth by a nice even feeling on the reins. Insufficient freedom of the head will cramp the horse's style as it will interfere with the horse balancing itself when negotiating the obstacle, and unless the rider gives his hands with the horse, or slips the reins through his hands as the horse is landing, which is a highly improbable action on the part of any novice, the horse undoubtedly will receive a bad “job” on his mouth. The result of being “jobbed” on the mouth or being ridden with heavy hands over fences will cause the horse to throw up his head on landing, or jump with his head in the air which will mean that the hind-legs will be dropped on the jump.

Ill-treatment of the horse's mouth must be avoided at all costs, and the pupil should learn the value of flexible wrists and the necessity for the horse having liberty of rein. It should be remembered in jumping that the happy medium is when the bridle assists, but in no way hinders the

Diagram 4. THE CORRECT POSITION WHEN LANDING OVER AN OBSTACLE

Here the rider is *with his horse* and has his arms well stretched out and hands low on the horse's withers, giving him freedom of rein, at the same time maintaining proper control.

The leg position is good and the bent knee ensures the absorption of the shock now that the horse has impact with the ground. The rider's body has automatically resumed its ordinary position with the momentum of the horse going through the air without any exaggerated movement. Throughout the jump the rider's position, which was inclined forward at the “take off,” has been naturally adjusting itself to the horse's movement caused by perfect balance and grip. The horse is jumping freely and there has been no interference with his mouth.



Diagram 4. THE CORRECT POSITION WHEN LANDING OVER AN OBSTACLE

horse. However, as the rider's seat becomes more secure he will not be placing so much reliance on his hands to keep his seat by holding on to the horse's mouth, and as he gets more accustomed to jumping, his tenacious hold, which is so characteristic of the novice, will be ameliorating.

In order to inspire confidence into the pupil, and in order to save the horse's mouth, a neck-strap, to which the pupil may cling, may be permitted in the early stages. This neck-strap may be the martingale or an improvised neck-strap with a stirrup-leather, but on no account should the pupil be allowed to clutch on to the front arch of the saddle, for this has the tendency to cause him to be "behind his horse," which is to be avoided. On the other hand, the use of a neck-strap will cause the rider to incline his body forward. The rider's legs have a very important rôle to fulfil when jumping, and in order that they should be able to carry out their functions, i.e. the application of the leg "aids," it is necessary that they should be in the correct and best position to facilitate their use.

Diagram 5. A BAD, ILL-BALANCED SEAT

Throughout the jump the rider has been "left behind" and has been holding on by the reins, resulting in the horse having insufficient freedom of head, therefore lands unbalanced with his head up. A horse with his head carriage faulty cannot be balanced, and his style when jumping will be cramped. A high head carriage prevents the horse from raising his hind-quarters, and this fault, together with the dread of being "jobbed" in the mouth by heavy hands, will mean that the horse will drop his hind-legs on the jump.

This horse is being "jobbed" in the mouth. Note that his mouth is open and from his expression he is suffering excruciating torture from bad hands and a severe bit.

Note the rider's legs being stuck out like the shafts of a cart are unable to assist the horse in any way. There is no suggestion of cohesion between the man and his horse in this sketch. Further, there is an entire lack of suppleness in the man's rigid position, which reacts so disastrously on the horse.



Diagram 5. A BAD, ILL-BALANCED SEAT

We have seen how the rider inclines his body forward at the precise moment that the horse takes off to be in harmony ; with a small obstacle the rider will not have to lean forward as much as he will have to do for a big obstacle, which in fact will necessitate him raising his seat bones forward, and right out of the saddle, the greater part of his weight being taken on his knees and thighs. This action, however, will not come within the sphere of the novice, but it is explained in order to emphasise the fact that however the seat moves in the saddle there should always be the fixed point of contact between man and his mount, i.e. the knee-grip, which is immovable.

The rider's knee is a bent knee, and below the knee the leg should hang perfectly free and pliable, ever ready to apply “the aids,” or indications to the horse. In jumping the leg aids are applied for the following reasons :

- I. In order to collect the horse and have him back on his hocks and properly balanced before presenting him at the obstacle.
- II. In order to give the horse the indication to jump, which is known as “giving the office,” the rider uses the lower part of his legs by bringing pressure to bear, or closing them just behind the girths in the “aid area” at the actual moment when he wants the horse to take off.

Therefore it is essential that the rider's knee should be bent in order to facilitate this pliability of the lower part of the legs for the correct application of “the aids.”

Should the knee, on the other hand, be stiff, the following will result :

- I. The lower part of the legs cannot be pliable, and therefore cannot give indications to the horse.
- II. Should the knees be stiff the lower part of the legs will be so advanced as to prevent the rider leaning forward in his saddle to "go with" the horse when it "takes off."

The pupil must realise that he will later have to ride horses which want riding at their fences, horses which will not jump unless they are driven into them with determination, and that the only means for success depends on the correct and timely application of the leg aids. Therefore, it is essential that he should practise swinging the lower part of the legs to the rear, at the same time retaining an immovable knee-grip, and then practise the application of the leg aids, which is best described as a squeezing motion just behind the girths.

Another reason for the knees being bent is that they will act as shock-absorbers when the horse in landing over the fence has impact with the ground. For example, we are taught in a gymnasium that when we jump down off any height to land on our toes, and bend the knees to counteract the shock of impact with the ground, for should we land with stiff knees and flat on our feet we will get a shock which will vibrate up the spine. For the same reason, therefore, should the rider land with his knees stiff and legs sticking out like the shafts of a cart he will feel the shock of impact when his horse's forelegs strike the ground, and what is more,

their rigid position will have its effect on the horse with the full and dead weight of the rider bearing down on the stirrup-irons.

Moreover, there will be a complete lack of the

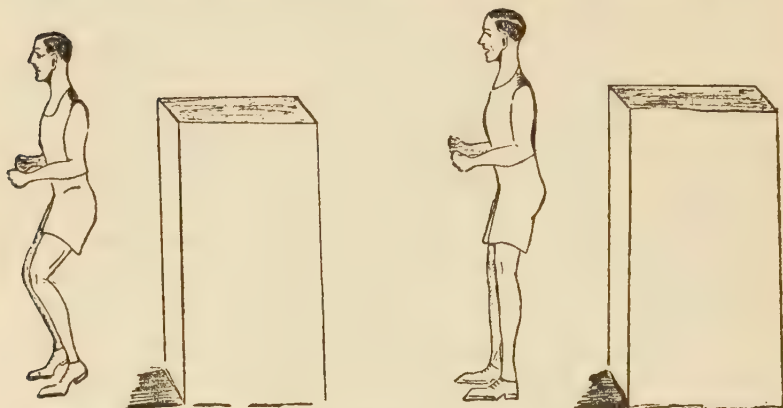


Diagram 6.

Correct.

Bending the knees to absorb shock on impact with the ground.

Incorrect.

Landing with a stiff knee. Here there will be a shock on impact with the ground which will vibrate up the spine.

element of unison between man and his mount should the rider adopt this rigid position of the legs, and whilst this style is maintained there can never be any possibility of the novice attaining any degree of suppleness which is so essential in jumping.

Having negotiated the jump, the pupil must

Diagram 7.

Here is a somewhat exaggerated forward position of the rider's body in negotiating a biggish fence.

The rider has nice contact with the horse's mouth and his leg position is excellent. The bent knee is fulfilling its rôle as shock absorber with the horse striking the ground. The rider is "going with" his horse and is taking the weight off the animal's loins to ensure free movement behind the saddle. The element of rhythm is very conspicuous. Here there is control, balance, grip, and suppleness.

Compare this illustration of the modern seat with that of Diagram 8 depicting the old-fashioned seat,



Diagram 7.

not pull the horse up too soon, but ease him up gently.

When the pupil has made very considerable progress jumping without stirrups may be introduced, the stirrup-irons being crossed in front of the saddle to prevent them dangling about. As the pupil gains confidence he should next be encouraged to drop the reins and ride over the jump with his arms folded, maintaining his stirrups at first, and then discarding them. This exercise, if it can be successfully accomplished, will create great confidence, but it is an exercise which depends on the pupil's inclination, and no pupil should be coerced into carrying it out.

In order to introduce riding at a jump without holding the reins, and with the arms folded, the pupil should be practised first riding over the fence with the reins held loosely in one hand.

The foundation for success in jumping without stirrups is a firm knee-grip with the heels well pushed down, and that the rider should incline his body forward at the psychological moment as the horse takes off.

HINTS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

The success of the elementary jumping lessons will depend to a very great extent on the instructor and his method of instruction, and his efficiency.

Lack of confidence on the part of the instructor,

Diagram 8.

Here is the old-fashioned seat. There is control and firmness of seat but lack of rhythm and no suppleness. Should the horse "pitch" badly he will get no assistance from the rider bearing down his full weight on the stirrups. Further, the stiff knee prevents shock absorption as the horse's forelegs strike the earth.



Diagram 8.

or failure to teach the pupil on a thorough and systematic basis will be only too apparent at the elementary jumping lesson.

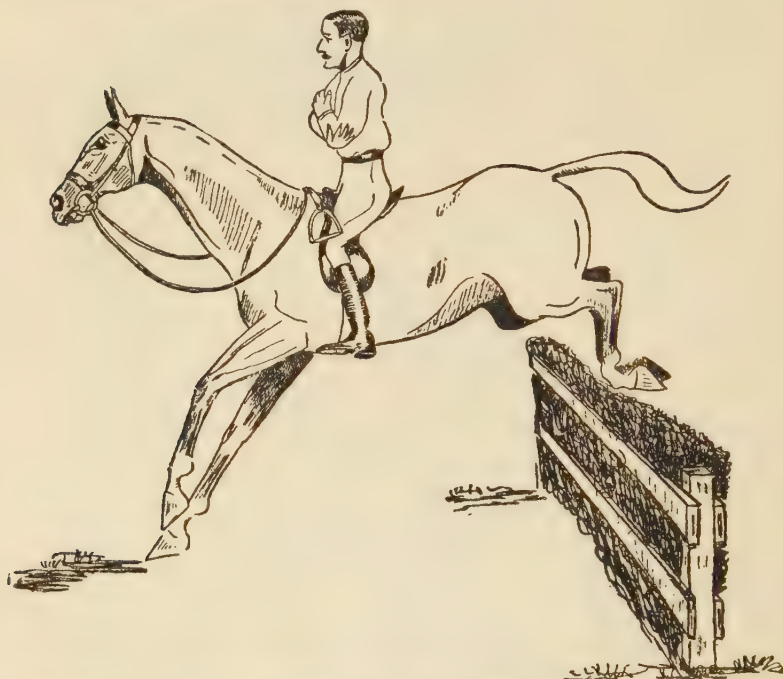


Diagram 9. JUMPING WITHOUT REINS OR STIRRUPS, AN EXERCISE FOR MORE ADVANCED PUPILS

This illustration demonstrates the "independent seat."

The rider's seat denotes balance and grip and he is completely independent of his hands, arms, or stirrups.

His knees are firm against the saddle and his heels are well pushed down.

Note how the stirrups are crossed to prevent dangling and banging against the horse's flanks or the rider's ankles.

The arms are folded by the right hand gripping the left elbow and the left hand should grasp the right arm at the biceps.

Note also that the rider's seat besides denoting firmness is also composed of suppleness.

Teaching equitation has no parallel, for there are two separate bodies to contend with, first in the pupil, and secondly in the horse, both of which cannot possibly have any point of contact between

them at the initial stages. The instructor, therefore, has to cater for each individual pupil, and the variant of the equine element, for although a trained animal, and however reliable, the horse is ever an unknown quantity in the hands of the novice, who unwittingly will confuse him, and continue to confuse him, by applying the wrong aids, or not applying them, and by holding on to his mouth or "jobbing" it when least expected. The instructor's aim and object is to establish some kind of liaison between these two elements, and to endeavour to weld them ultimately into a harmonious machine; further, he has to teach the pupil to ride other horses, and every horse has his own idiosyncrasies, both in temperament and in action.

Throughout the course of instruction, pupils should be given opportunities of riding many different horses, but for the first jumping lessons they should be allowed to ride the horse which they most fancy in order to give encouragement and inspire confidence.

Falls should be avoided as far as possible, particularly when jumping, and on no account should a whip be used or cracked as it has the tendency both to frighten the pupils and the horses. The instructor should be liberal with praise where it is due, and should avoid scolding in any way.

The best results will be obtained by the instructor who has the faculty of appreciating the situation from the pupil's point of view, and who adopts tranquil methods. Success cannot be achieved by "rating" the pupils, as they will only become discouraged and nervous, not only with the fear

of the horse and the task, but with the instructor, who should always endeavour to foster confidence between himself and his pupils.

The keynote to instruction in equitation is demonstration, and this fact cannot be sufficiently emphasised in the jumping lesson. The instructor, therefore, must be mounted on a well-schooled horse and should show the class the correct way to jump, and explain what he does in a clear and concise manner, and then get the pupils to copy him.

As progress is made the instructor should then demonstrate the incorrect way of jumping, emphasising the usual faults with the hands, position of the seat and legs for comparison, and in order that the pupils may see the awkwardness and results derived from faulty positions.

Particular importance should be laid on the necessity to be careful with the horse's mouth, as drawing the hands back suddenly will result in the horse being “jobbed” in the mouth, and will cause him to drop his hind-legs on the fence, associating the landing over a fence with pain or discomfort.

There will always be found a few more enterprising pupils who should be chosen for carrying out the more difficult exercises before the rest of the class—seeing other members of the class performing successfully will give encouragement to the backward pupils.

In riding over jumps without the reins the arms should always be folded; also folded arms will at first assist the rider to contract the muscles of the body, and, therefore, maintain a tighter grip with the thighs and knees. As the pupil makes progress,

this tight method of folding the arms should be relaxed in order to attain suppleness and rhythm in the motion of the body.

With progress the height of the jump should be raised and another fence may be introduced at an interval of some twenty feet. When the pupil is sufficiently proficient, he should ride over an "in-and-out" fence, as this obstacle will be a great test for his security of seat.

The "lane" system of teaching is greatly advocated for pupils of a more advanced stage. The "lane" is a long fenced-in enclosure, which contains a variety of jumps placed at intervals which must be negotiated as the horse cannot run out, and down this course the pupils should be sent one at a time. When jumping in the riding-school or *manège* great care must be taken to see that there is a good interval between the pupils, and that after they have negotiated the fence they should be told to ride on round the school. This will prevent bunching at the corner immediately after the jump, where there is a likelihood of kicking, or an accident caused by a horse in rear taking hold over the fence and careering on to cause a *mêlée* at the corner.

CHAPTER IX

CARE OF THE HORSE

THE STABLE AND STABLE MANAGEMENT.

AS the horse spends the greater part of his life in the stable, every provision should be made for his comfort as far as circumstances will permit. Stable accommodation in the vicinity may be very limited, and one will in this case have to take what is available, but there is no reason why improvements should not be carried out instantly to make the horse comfortable by the prevention of draughts, renewal of mangers (nothing puts a horse more off his feed than particles of oats which have got into cracks and crevices in an old and dilapidated manger), new slates or tiles on the roof to prevent leaking; whilst the walls should be tarred half-way up and then whitewashed up to the top, which will give a smart and cleanly appearance. Tar is a good disinfectant, whereas whitewash is too glaring for the horse's eyes, and will come off on his coat if he rubs against it should the walls be completely whitewashed. All these improvements will make a sordid little stable quite habitable.

Should there be a choice of stables, always select that with the best ventilation, as fresh air is a factor of vital importance for keeping the horse in health

and in condition; ill-ventilated and draughty stables being the chief cause of coughs and colds, a high aspect will guarantee fresh air, and also drainage.

Loose-boxes are preferable to stalls, for the following important reasons :

- I. A loose-box enables the horse to turn about and stand in any direction he pleases, which is of incalculable benefit for his comfort, and therefore rest.
- II. The horse is loose, and consequently this eliminates the danger which is always likely with horses which are secured, of getting their feet over the head-rope or chain.
- III. Again, with a loose-box there is no risk of a horse breaking loose in the night and kicking his stable companions, and getting kicked in return.

For preference a large airy loose-box with the door in two halves to enable the horse to put his head out is admirable, and is excellent for the occupant's morale.

Nothing looks, or is more depressing than a dark loose-box, which is tucked away at the end of a stable without any vantage-point for the horse, particularly should he be cut off entirely from his next-door neighbour, for the horse is a gregarious animal and enjoys the company of his species in and out of stables. Sunlight, too, is most beneficial for the horse.

With the preferred type of loose-box whose doors should open outwards, care should be taken to see that the bottom half of the door is sufficiently high

to prevent the horse from jumping, or attempting to jump out.

To avoid draughts the window should always be on the same side as the door, and each loose-box should have a window large enough to give the horse plenty of fresh air during the night when the top half of the door is shut.

Watering.—Horses must always be watered before they are fed, as water given in any quantity after a feed is very bad for the digestion and is liable to cause colic. The watering of horses is an all-important subject in stable management, and in a number of stables sufficient water is not given. A horse cannot have too much, but he can have too little water by it being withheld. Always the best and purest water should be given; it is a fallacy to believe that horses do better on rain water, or muddy water, but they prefer soft water to hard water.

A horse will drink from four to ten gallons of water daily, and should be watered four times during the day. In many stables it is the custom to stand a bucket of fresh water continually in the box, which is a very sound plan. However, as a horse will drink a greater quantity when watered at specified times than if he always has access to it, it is better to water him by day at regular intervals, and leave a full bucket in his loose-box throughout the night, taking care to place it in the opposite corner to his manger, in order to prevent him eating and drinking alternately, which is bad for his digestion.

There is no harm in giving a horse a bucketful of cold water on his return to stables after exercise,

but he should never be watered immediately before he goes out, and in no circumstances should he be made to move faster than at a walk for at least twenty minutes after a full drink. Should it be necessary to go at a fast pace after watering, allow the horse some half-dozen swallows only.

When watering at a stream the horse should stand facing up the stream, so as to avoid drinking polluted or muddy water stirred up by his feet.

Feeding. Times for Feeding, Quality and Quantity.—The principles of feeding are not complicated in any way, but are based entirely on common-sense rules. In comparison to his size, the horse has a small stomach, consequently the main principle in feeding is to feed often and in small quantities, else his digestive powers will be overtaxed. Here are five guiding rules to feeding :

1. Always feed after the horse has been watered, never before.
2. Feed with regularity.
3. One hour should be allowed to a horse after a feed before he is worked.
4. Observe quietness in the stables during feeding time.
5. Horses should be fed according to requirements.

A horse should be fed at least four times a day ; five times will have better results as it is better for his digestion, and will prevent him becoming ravenous, and bolting his feed when he gets it.

The first feed should be given as early as possible, and always before the horse leaves the stables for work, and the last feed should be a large one, and

given as late as possible, because there is such a long interval between it and the next feed the following morning.

It is very important that quietness should be observed during feeding time, and nervous horses often will not feed at all if they are disturbed by noise or movement in the stables.

When a feed has been given one should remain just long enough to see that the horse has commenced to eat it before departing, else one may miss noticing whether he is off his feed, which is an indication of his being sick. It is a frightful mistake to groom a horse while he is feeding—a custom which, unfortunately, is not unknown.

The amount of food given should to a great extent depend on the work the horse is required to perform, and his corn ration must be increased or modified accordingly. Should a horse's work or exercise be reduced, his corn ration must also be reduced, but with extreme caution in order to prevent the horse losing condition; this in itself demonstrates the art of stable management or "stable-craft."

Oats are the natural food of the horse, as they contain all the necessary ingredients for building up muscle and putting on flesh, besides being nutritious and appetising. For a horse that is being regularly worked, 10 to 12 lbs. of oats per day is a good average allowance. It is only natural that a large horse should require a proportionately larger ration than a small one, and it may be taken for granted, as an approximate guide to the corn allowance, that a 16-hand horse will require 4 lbs. oats more per day than a horse standing 15 hands.

Oats can be given whole, but it is better to give them crushed. Hard and fast rules, however, as to the amount of corn to be allowed cannot be laid down, as the quantity should be regulated according to the amount of work done by the individual horse. It is not uncommon to find that the allowance for horses which are being regularly hunted is as much as 16 lbs. per diem.

The best indication as to the quantity of corn which should be given is the horse's actual "demeanour." Should the animal become unduly fresh, it is an indication that he needs less corn, or is not having sufficient exercise or work to merit the amount allowed.

Hay is the staple food of the horse, as he can subsist on it alone, and for the average horse at work or hunting, 12 to 15 lbs. is a good ration.

The hay allowance should never be stinted, and if a reduction in forage is necessary, curtail the corn ration in preference to hay. Hay given to horses should be old meadow hay, which has been stacked for a year before it is used. New hay should not be given. Ten pounds of corn and 10 lbs. of hay, or 12 lbs. of corn and 12 lbs. of hay per diem is a good average distribution for a horse in ordinary work.

A bran mash should be given at least once a week. Saturday night is usually regarded as "mash" night in the majority of stables, whilst the giving of two mashes per week, on Wednesday and Saturday nights respectively, is the custom in a number of stables. Bran mashes are good for the horse's digestion, and they also act as mild laxatives.

A "mash" should consist of $2\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. to 3 lbs. of bran in a stable bucket, to which should be added

two or three ounces of common salt to make it more palatable, which should be mixed up with the hand. Then sufficient boiling water should be stirred over the bran to wet it thoroughly, stirring all the time with a stick. The bucket should be covered with sacking in order to keep the heat in, and it should be allowed to steam for at least twenty minutes. When it is cool enough to eat, it should be given to the horse. When necessary, Epsom salts can be given in a bran mash, instead of the common salt. It is not advisable to add a few handfuls of corn, although this is a very common-place custom ; oats given in a bran mash are never properly digested owing to the fact that horses consume bran mashes without much mastication. However, it may be necessary to do so to get the horse to eat his mash, particularly if he should be a pernickety feeder. The correct time for giving a bran mash is after the horse has finished his last feed of corn at night.

Boiled linseed should be given on one night in the week ; besides being excellent for the horse's blood, it is of great benefit to his coat. Linseed should be carefully prepared before it is given to a horse : for at least twenty-four hours it should be soaked in water and warmed up to feed, or boiled for six hours until it becomes “jellified.” When linseed is being boiled it should be frequently stirred to prevent it sticking to the side of the receptacle in which it is being cooked.

Carrots are an excellent diet for horses, and they can be given frequently. Care should be taken to give them sliced lengthways, and not across, in order to prevent the horse choking.

Chaff, or chopped hay, is a very important item in the feeding of horses and it should be mixed with every feed of corn, as it causes the animal to eat slowly and masticate his food. (A chaff-cutter is a very essential stable implement.) When giving chaff in the feed, it is advisable to damp it slightly before use.

The essence of good feeding depends on (1) knowing the exact amount of forage necessary for each horse for the amount of work he is doing to keep him fit and in condition, which knowledge can only be attained by a careful study of the individual horse and his idiosyncrasies, and (2) variety in feeding. Variations are all important in the horse's dietary, and everything should be done to relieve the monotony of his food by giving a handful or two of chopped green grass, dandelions, or gratings of carrots with the feed on alternate nights. This system of variety in feeding is invaluable for keeping "bad doers" and pernickety feeders in condition.

Should it be necessary to curtail a horse's corn ration, a "false feed" should be given in lieu, which might consist of chaff, bran, and carrots mixed and slightly damped. Horses in stables can occasionally be led out to graze on ordinary pasture grass for some ten minutes, but on no account should they be allowed to eat very green, rich grass.

A lump of rock-salt should always be placed in every manger.

Method of giving Feeds, Hay-nets and Mangers.—The bulk of hay should be given at nights, when the horse is left with ample leisure to eat and digest it. Without doubt the best method of giving hay is in a hay-net. These nets, which are made of hemp, are

most economical, as they prevent a horse from “nosing” his hay out of the manger and walking on it. The hay-net should be tied to the rack chain ring in the loose-box. Care should be taken to see that the net is tied sufficiently high enough to prevent a horse getting his foot caught in it should he become restive.

The system of feeding horses from the ground level is becoming very prevalent, and it has everything to be said in its favour. Apart from being the way that Nature intended the horse to feed, it has the following advantages :

- (1) There is no contraction or cramping of the throat muscles, which takes place when the horse feeds from a raised manger.
- (2) The head being lowered the saliva flows more freely, and the food always falling back on the molars causes better mastication.
- (3) The food has to rise all the way up the gullet which will cause the feeding to be slower and thereby assist digestion, whereas in the raised manger the food falls down the gullet.
- (4) A horse feeding from the ground level is stretching the tendons and ligaments of his forelegs, therefore keeping them supple and less liable to strain.
- (5) Ground-level feeding dispenses with the raised manger, an object which encourages crib-biting amongst horses, and which assists the inveterate crib-biter to carry out this stable vice.
- (6) The raised manger is very often responsible for injuries to the knees and head.

But if ground-level feeding is adopted it should be done from a suitable manger—to feed out of a box, bucket, or tub, is not recommended as such a receptacle is liable to be moved from its proper position and it may get kicked or rolled into the middle of the loose-box.¹

The writer has in mind a very excellent white glazed triangular and movable trough called “The Crosbie,” which he has seen in racing and hunting stables, and which fits very neatly into the corner of a box.

BEDDING.

The choice of bedding lies between straw, peat moss, and sawdust. In the selection of straw only old wheat straw should be used for bedding, oat straw is not suitable for bedding as horses invariably eat it, and barley straw is liable to cause skin irritation and colic if eaten. Again horses are more liable to eat straw when it is new.

Peat moss makes good bedding, and is very economical, but it will make the horse dusty, and consequently demand more grooming. Special care should be taken of the feet when the bedding consists of peat moss, as it is liable to become fouled by the horse “staling” and clog his feet with damp matter, which is liable to cause thrush.

Sawdust should not be used unless there is an adequate supply for renewal.

¹ The horses belonging to the Metropolitan Mounted Police, London, are fed as nature decreed, off the ground, and the well-managed and thoroughly up-to-date stables at Imber Court are fitted with ground mangers. If any doubt exists as to the advisability of ground-level feeding one has only to regard the horses of the Force and see their perfect condition.

GROOMING.

Good grooming is essential for keeping the horse in health and condition.

A horse should be thoroughly groomed twice a day in order (1) to keep him clean by removing dirt and sweat which have accumulated, (2) for putting on muscle, and (3) for his general appearance.

Grooming should be carried out systematically in the daily stable routine. The horse should be groomed immediately after he has had his morning feed, and at evening stables before he receives his last feed for the night. On return from exercises he should of course be cleaned and dried all over and his feet should be picked out.

Should a horse return from exercise in a hot and sweating condition, he should be led about in the stable-yard if it is fine, in order to let him cool off before being brought into the stable.

A good strapper will groom a horse thoroughly in half an hour, or in forty minutes should the animal be particularly dirty.

The following are the grooming “tools,” with their particular functions, which should be kept in a special grooming basket for each individual horse, in the approximate order in which they should be used :

1 hoof pick.

1 sponge for washing the horse's eyes, lips, nostrils, and dock.

1 body brush for cleaning the horse's coat.

1 curry comb for cleaning the body brush.

1 dandy brush for removing dry mud from the legs and for brushing out the mane and tail.

1 mane or tail comb.

1 " wisp " for massaging the horse.

(A wisp is made by coiling hay into a rope, and tying it so as to make a pad.)

2 rubbers, one for polishing and finishing the horse, and the other for spreading the grooming tools on to facilitate work.

The following method is suggested for grooming :

- (1) Rack up the horse if he is in a loose-box.
- (2) Pick out the feet.
- (3) Sponge the eyes, lips, nostrils, and dock, and carefully rinse out sponge.
- (4) Groom the body, beginning at the near side of the neck behind the ear, and on completion of the near side, groom the off side in similar manner, paying particular attention to the belly and beneath the legs.
- (5) Clean the legs.
- (6) Turn the horse round in his box, remove his head-stall, and groom his head and ears carefully, and brush out his mane.
- (7) Turn the horse round again, and clean and brush out the tail.
- (8) Wisp the horse's body all over for at least eight minutes.
- (9) Finish off with the rubber.
- (10) Clean the head-stall.
- (11) Oil the hoofs.

When using the hoof pick between the frog and the shoe, it should be drawn from the heel in the direction of the toe. On no account should the point be forced down the sides or the cleft of the frog (see Diagram 1).

Use the body brush with a circular stroke in the direction of the lay of the hair. The left hand does



Diagram 1.

Should a horse be inclined to kick when he is having his hind-feet picked out, lift up the foot and cross it over the other leg, and stand on the same side as the leg on which the horse is standing.

the "strapping" on the near side, and the right hand on the off side.

A wisp is used for massaging and hardening the muscles, and for bringing the blood to the surface, and thereby promoting circulation. Wisping should be carried out vigorously, the wisp being brought down with a bang with long sweeping strokes on the horse's coat in the direction of the lay of the hair. Wisping never fails to improve a horse's coat, and is most invigorating for the horse.

A horse's legs and feet should not be washed. Mud on the legs should be allowed to dry, and should then be removed with the dandy brush and loose handfuls of straw.

The washing of the legs and feet with water is the frequent cause of "cracked heels," "grease," "thrush," and other evils, which will incapacitate a horse for work. The danger is not so much in the actual washing of the legs, although washing does remove the natural oil or grease from the skin, but in the drying, and unless one personally supervises, the operation will terminate in disaster, as the average "strapper" cannot be depended on to rub a horse's legs bone dry.

At evening stables make a point of feeling a horse's legs for any signs of "filling" or heat, by running the same hand down each leg. (Do not do this with alternate hands, as one hand may be colder than the other, and will therefore not detect the presence of heat in the leg or foot.) Heat in a leg is an indication of trouble, so do not be surprised if the horse pulls out lame next morning. Lameness is sometimes very difficult to detect; in order to do so have the horse trotted towards you on a hard surface and then regard him trotting away. If the horse is lame he will give an uneven appearance in

his action, as in his desire to relieve the painful limb he will place all his weight on the sound one. The movements of the head in lameness will indicate which foreleg the horse is lame on by throwing it up every time the affected limb comes to the ground, and by lowering it to the natural position when the sound one comes down, and he will be said to be “favouring” a leg.

Should the lameness be in one of the hind-legs, the hock of the sound leg will invariably rise higher than the lame one when trotting away; also the head will indicate which leg is affected by dropping when the diagonally opposite foreleg comes to the ground. For example, the lameness has been located to one of the hind-legs, and if in trotting away the horse drops his head when the near fore strikes the ground, he will be lame in the off hind.

Usually lameness occurs at or below the knees and hocks, and it can be caused by any one of the following ailments: splints, sore shins, brushing, cracked heels, curbs, corns, thrush, ringbones, side bones, bog or bone spavin, sand-crack, speedy cutting, thorough pin, navicular disease, laminitis (fever in the feet), also all sprains to the tendons and ligaments. Lameness can be caused by bad shoeing and pricks from nails, or picked-up nails or stones, which have punctured or bruised the sole or caused an injury to the sensitive structures of the foot.

CLIPPING AND CLOTHING.

Clipping is essential for horses at work, otherwise they are liable to contract a chill from taking too long a time to dry after sweating. A clipped horse is capable of doing a great deal more work, a long

coat being very exhausting. Moreover, a clipped horse is easier to clean and dry.

Clipping should be carried out during the first fortnight in October, and the majority of horses will need to be done once again before Christmas. A horse may be clipped "all out" on the first occasion, but subsequently he should not be clipped below the elbow and stifle.

Leaving the hair on the legs is recommended, particularly for hunters, with a view to preventing injuries from thorns. Further, it keeps the legs warm.

A "saddle patch" is a good protection against saddle galls.

A horse should be well rugged up after clipping. The usual custom is to put on a blanket, and then cover with a well-fitting jute rug, which embraces the neck and is buckled at the breast. Rollers are liable to cause galls or sore backs when they slip out of position, and it is advisable to dispense with the roller, and have two webbing surcingles sewn on to the rugs, one being put under the girth, and the other farther back under the belly so as to keep the rugs in position. It is quite unnecessary that these surcingles should extend over the back, and they may be stitched on to the rug half-way up; the first one where the buckles of the saddle-girths would come, and the second surcingles sewn on farther back in a corresponding position.

Take care to have the actual buckles underneath the horse, else he might get a sore or gall from lying on it in the night. There should be a leather pad on the reverse side of the buckles to prevent the horse from getting chafed.

EXERCISE.

A horse requires at least two hours' exercise every day. On a non-hunting day he should be taken for a quiet hack, which should include one short gallop to get him to “open his pipes.” Walking is a splendid exercise, and is excellent for getting horses into condition; the horse should be ridden up in his bit to make him step out and derive full benefit from his exercise. Walking in a slovenly and uncollected manner can never have the same results. It is always advisable to exercise a horse in company with another, as it prevents him from getting bored. Always choose a different direction when possible, as horses enjoy a change and diversity of scenery like humans, and their morale suffers from monotony. A canter down a gentle slope is excellent, as it causes a horse to use his shoulders properly.

CARE OF THE FEET AND SHOEING (see Diagram 2).

“No foot, no horse,” has been long a stable proverb, and is a truism which should be carefully borne in mind. Care of the horse's feet is one of the most important subjects in “stablecraft,” and it is not incorrect to state that many lamenesses of the leg originate in bad management of the feet.

Farriers vary considerably in knowledge and skill at their trade, some being highly proficient and knowledgeable, whilst others will be found deplorably inefficient and ignorant. Faulty shoeing can be the cause of many foot ailments, and a careless and bad farrier can inflict irrevocable damage to a sound foot. The blacksmith who knows his job will make the shoe fit the horse's foot, but unfortunately there are some who make the horse's foot



London News Agency

FOLLOWERS OF THE PYTCHLEY MOVING OFF TO COVERT SIDE AFTER THE MEET AT SWINFORD LAST SEASON

Thirteen out of the fourteen lady followers who can be seen in this picture are riding side-saddle.

fit their shoe by a wrongful rasping of the surface of the wall of the hoof, which they afterwards blacken or oil in order to camouflage their misdeed.

The "clenches" (the turn up of the nails after they have been driven home and had the points wrung off by the claw of the hammer) should be flat and hammered well down on the wall of the hoof, for should they not be properly clenched they will

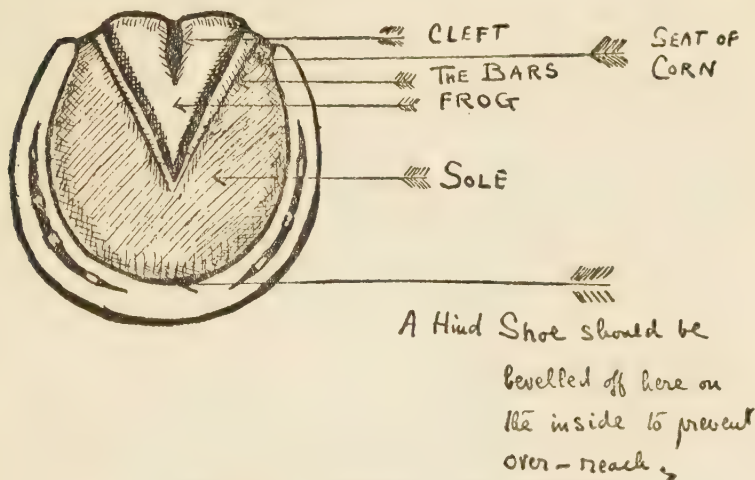


Diagram 2. SHOWING A NEAR FOESHOE

assuredly cause a wound which might be of a very serious nature, particularly should the horse be inclined "to brush."

It is also particularly important to see that the shoe does not prevent the frog from having contact with the ground, for lack of such contact (called "frog pressure") will cause the frog through disuse to shrivel up and become diseased with thrush. Frog pressure is essential for the healthy state of the foot. Again, in order to prevent overreaching the inner rims of the toes of the hind shoes should

be “ bevelled off,” remembering that overreaches are rarely caused by the toe of the hind shoe, but by an abrupt edge of the inside of the toe of the hind shoe (see Diagram 2).

Care of the feet and shoeing is an inexhaustible subject, and every owner should understand the rudimentary principles of farriery and the structure of the horse's foot.

A horse should be shod with a new set of shoes every month. Should the shoes not have become sufficiently worn down to warrant new shoes, they should be taken off in order to allow the foot to be lowered by paring, owing to the growth of horn, and they can then be replaced.

This operation is termed a “ remove,” and the shoes should be removed, irrespective of their wear, in order that the feet should be lowered.

CARE OF THE TEETH.

Sufficient attention is rarely given to the subject of a horse's teeth, and all horses should have their teeth examined periodically. The molar teeth, or grinders, are apt to become sharpened at the edges on the outside of the jaws, and this will prevent their natural function of grinding which will interfere with mastication, and thereby cause digestive troubles and consequent loss of condition. The writer has in mind a horse which was proclaimed a bad “ doer,” and sold as such: so bad was the condition of the animal's molar teeth that he refused to eat any hay; the possibility of the teeth requiring attention had never been considered until he became the property of a horse-master, who forthwith despatched him to the veterinary surgeon

for a very necessary filing. The writer was present when the very capable "horse dentist" was at work, and it was most interesting to watch the horse ravenously eating hay with an almost surprised expression on his face immediately after the filing process was finished.

BANDAGES AND HOW TO APPLY THEM (see Diagram 3).

There are two methods of bandaging: (1) for exercise, which should not extend over the fetlock, and (2) for the stable, which should extend down over the pastern joint. Bandages should always be applied over a layer of cotton-wool, as the cotton-wool has an elastic tendency and, therefore, will not interfere with the circulation of the blood. Exercise bandages should always be used when schooling horses over jumps, as they are a safeguard against cuts and overreaches, and frequently one sees a bad gash close to the tendons which might have been prevented by a bandage.

Bandages are not practical in the hunting-field, as they are liable to work loose and get badly torn in hedges, or become clogged in mud to such an extent as to be a hindrance to the horse.

A stable bandage applied at night after a hard day's hunting will prevent the legs and joints from filling, and keep the legs warm, but it must not be put on too tightly—just tight enough to prevent it coming off.

Tail Bandage.—It always gives a finished appearance to a horse to have a well-groomed and tidy tail. (Tails should only be "pulled" by men who are expert at the work.)

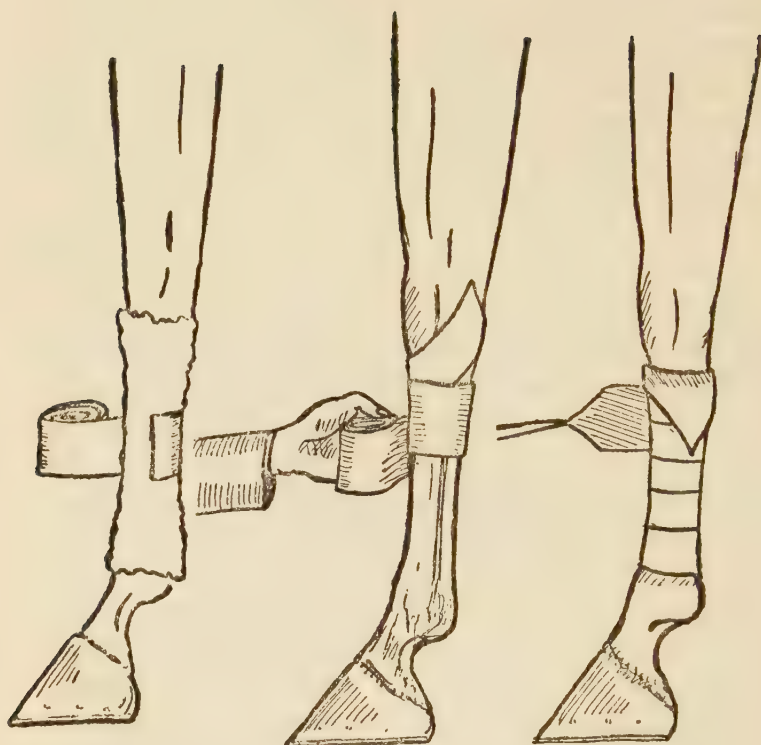


Diagram 3.

A

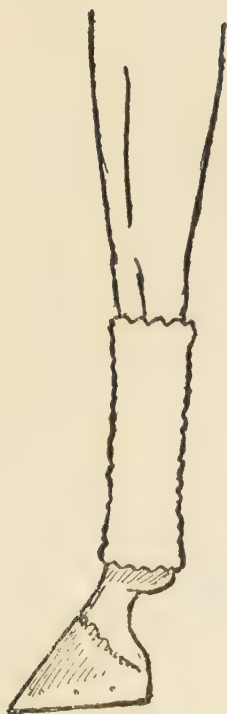
How not to apply a bandage. By this method the bandage will slip.

B

How to commence a bandage. Note that the end has been placed obliquely across the knee, which can be turned down just before the tapes are tied. This will make the bandage secure and will prevent it working free as it would by the method shown in Diagram A. The bandage is wound downwards towards the fetlock and then up again.

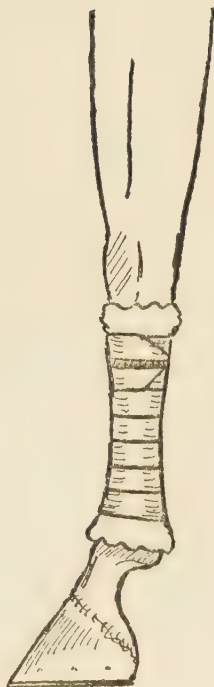
C

Note inner end of the bandage has been turned down preparatory to the last fold being made over it. This fold will also give protection against the knot of the tapes when tied. Tapes must lie flat when tied and not be twisted. Have knot on outside of leg.



D

The leg covered in a layer of cotton-wool prior to applying bandage. Cotton-wool must always be used with exercise bandages as it has a resilience which will prevent any interference with the circulation.



E

A leg correctly bandaged for exercise. Note layer of cotton-wool underneath. Cotton-wool has been omitted from Diagrams B and C in order to avoid a complicated illustration. Note that the tape is flat.



F

A bandage applied for the stable. Note that the folds have been extended down over the fetlock joint and round the pastern. A bandage to keep the leg from filling after a day's hunting and to keep the legs warm.

Diagram 3.

A tail bandage should be put on the night before a day's hunting, in order to keep it in nice trim and shape, and prevent the horse rubbing it against the box. When travelling in a horse-box, either by road or rail, a tail bandage should always be applied.

STABLE APPLIANCES.

In running a small stable it is necessary to obtain those appliances, requisites, and implements which are essential for stable management, as follows: Head-stalls and ropes, day and night rugs, knee-caps, bandages, a clipping machine, singeing lamp, chaff-cutter, corn-bin, corn measure, sieve, hay-nets, grater for carrots, wicker skips, buckets or wooden pails (the latter preferably, as they are useful when a horse's leg requires bathing, as his foot can be stood in them), and such implements as forks, shovels, and a yard-brush to mention the most important, including of course the grooming tools, which have already been tabulated, and last, but not least, a small veterinary chest for first-aid treatment.

STABLE HANDS.

Stable hands are an all-important subject, and one should use extreme caution in engaging a man to look after one's horses. Always see that a man has a genuine recommendation before engaging him. The Ex-Cavalrymen's Association at 112 Belgrave Road, S.W. 1, can always supply a good man with credentials, who will have been taught stable management under the soundest possible principles. A perusal of the advertisement columns of *The Field* and likewise *Horse and Hound*, will often assist one to find a good groom.

CARE OF THE HORSE AFTER HUNTING.

After a day's hunting, the horse should be taken home quietly and carefully, and the considerate rider will dismount and lead him occasionally. If one has a distance to go, take the first opportunity to give him a bottle of ale mixed in a drink of water.

On arrival at stables, remove the bridle, slacken the girths, run the stirrup-irons up the leathers, but do not remove the saddle. Now throw a rug over the horse, and give him a bran mash with linseed gruel in it. Never give a large feed of corn after hunting, because when a horse is tired his vitality is low, and consequently his digestive powers are at their weakest. When he has finished his feed, the rug and saddle should be removed, and the horse should be quickly wiped over. It is a mistake to subject the hunter to a lengthy grooming when he is tired; his ears should be "pulled" through the hands, i.e. pulling them gently through the hands from the base to apex which is also known as "stripping the ears," and his throat should be thoroughly dried with a rubber, and as far as possible, all the mud should be removed with loose handfuls of straw from his belly and legs. Next his heels should be dried, his feet picked out, and his legs examined for thorns or cuts. If any thorns are found, extract them immediately and apply iodine to the spot.

By this time the horse should be nicely dry, and he can be rugged up, and bandages applied to all four legs over a good layer of cotton-wool, as shown in Diagram 3, E, taking care to have them slack enough for the horse's comfort, and in order that the circulation should not be stopped.

Should the horse be liable to “break out,” it is a very excellent plan to cover his back and loins with a layer of straw, and then cover him over with a rug on his return to stables. This straw can be removed before leaving him for the night.

“ROUGHING UP” AND SUMMERING THE HUNTER.

“*Roughing Up.*”—This is the term used to describe the process of preparing the hunter for being turned out on grass for the summer after the hunting season. It is a very gradual process, lasting for about three weeks. The horse should be turned into a large roomy box, with peat moss bedding, and gradually he should be deprived of his rugs. Throughout the day the top half of the door of the box will be open, and at night also, in order to acclimatise the horse to the night air.

His corn ration will be reduced by degrees, and also his exercise. He may now be turned out on grass during the day, and brought in at night, his shoes having been removed.

Throughout May, June, and July, he can be left out on grass, provided always that he has shelter or a big barn to go to. It is essential that he should always have access to water. Throughout this time his feet must be carefully examined and rasped when necessary. A field with nice shady trees is the best place to “summer” hunters, and in this case no barn or shelter will be required. Here the horse should remain, preferably in the company of one or two other horses, until the middle of August, when he can be brought up in preparation for the hunting season, with cub-hunting fixtures to assist him and his owner to get back into condition.

CHAPTER X

BITTING

THE HORSE'S MOUTH.

IN dealing with the subject of biting we must remember the following important facts which should influence our choice in selecting the most suitable type of bit for a horse.

I. Horses' mouths are not all alike ; some horses have highly sensitive or light mouths, whilst others have hard mouths. Horses which come under the former category will be found to respond to the slightest touch on the mouth, whilst the hard-mouthed animals will invariably be found to lean on the bit and pull. Again, some horses have one-sided mouths, caused by the animal holding the bit on one side of the mouth to protect a bit injury on the other side.

From rough treatment and from being constantly ridden by bad riders in a severe bit, the bars of a horse's mouth become numb and callous, with the inevitable result that he develops what is termed a hard mouth, and instead of coming back to the rider's hand, will set his jaw and pull.

It should be explained that the bars of a horse's mouth are the gums which are behind the incisor or front teeth, where the bit rests, and where it comes into action to cause the jaw to be relaxed.

II. Again, we must bear in mind that besides the variant of the horse's mouth, there is also the variance in the “ hands ” of the rider to contend with. Some riders will have light and sympathetic hands and flexible wrists, which are the essence of the horseman, denoting as they do a firm seat in the saddle, whilst other riders will have heavy and unyielding hands to the horse's mouth, which invariably means an insecurity of the seat. The rider's seat, therefore, reacts on his hands, so they, in their turn, react on the horse's mouth. As hands have such an important bearing on a horse's mouth, it is always advisable to get a horseman to try the horse if there is any doubt as to the actual state of his mouth before it is condemned for possessing a hard mouth by an inferior rider or a novice.

In order that readers may realise the inestimable value of good hands, it should be stated that horses with bad mouths can be re-mouthed by the expert horseman.

SELECTION AND FITTING OF BITS.

In choosing a bit, remember to find the bit that suits the horse, and not make the horse suit the bit. There are so many various kinds of bits that it is advisable to try the horse in several before making a decision as to which one should be used.

Again, it is of the utmost importance to select a bit of the correct size for the horse's mouth. Remember that a bit which has too narrow a mouthpiece will pinch and bruise the horse's lips, and that a bit with too wide a mouthpiece will move from side to side, and cause uneven pressure on the bars of the mouth. Ill-fitting bits inflict bit injuries

which are invariably the cause of a horse developing a bad temper, or becoming "nappy" from irritation.

When a horse is liable and inclined to suffer from chafes at the corner of the mouth, and also to prevent him getting nipped by the bit, it is advisable to attach leather washers or guards.

TYPES OF BITS.

There are a great assortment of bits, all of which have been designed for the same object, viz. :

- I. Facilitating control over the horse.
- II. Assisting to keep the horse balanced and collected by the lever action of the bit, which together with the action of the curb-chain induces the horse to bend at the poll, and relax his lower jaw to the rider's hand.

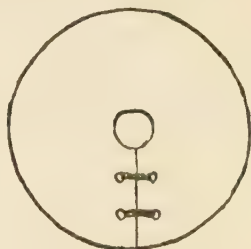


Diagram 1.

A CHEEK-GUARD

A leather washer or guard to come between the horse's mouth and the bit as a protection against chafes or being pinched between the junction of the mouthpiece and the rings of the snaffle. Note the leather lacing.

THE SNAFFLE.

Before dealing with the various types of bits, by which we mean bits and curbs which react as described in the above paragraph, we will first take what is called the snaffle, and describe its functions.

The snaffle is a very prevalent type of bit, and a number of horses bridle in it very well. It consists of two large rings with a jointed mouthpiece, and it acts on a horse's mouth by direct pressure and not by leverage like a bit. There are various patterns

of snaffles, that shown in Diagram 2 (A) being in the writer's mind preferable to Diagram 2 (B) owing to the better junction between the mouthpiece and the rings.

The twisted mouthpiece shown in Diagram 2 (c) is the most severe type of snaffle.

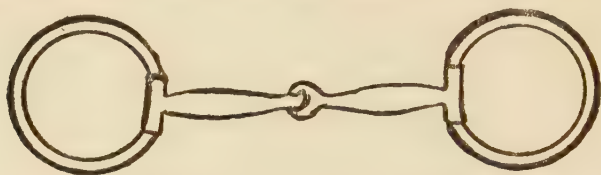


Diagram 2 (A). THE EGGBUTT SNAFFLE

This snaffle is ideal. Note the "T" junction which is movable. A horse's mouth will not get pinched or nipped at the corners with this junction.

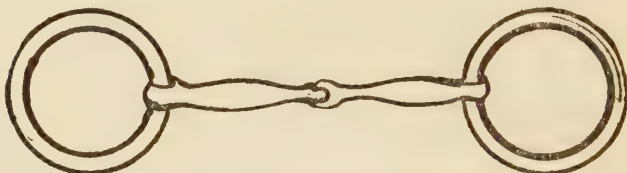


Diagram 2 (B). THE JOINTED SNAFFLE

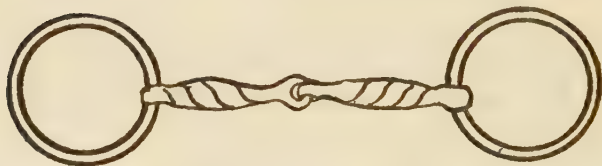


Diagram 2 (C). THE TWISTED SNAFFLE

The severest type of snaffle.

The snaffle does not, however, create the element of control over a horse that can be obtained from the curb bit, and although it is quite common in the hunting-field, the snaffle will never be found on the polo ground, where the element of control is required to a nicety.

The action of the snaffle is to raise the horse's

head up in contrast to the bit and curb, which causes the horse to bend his neck at the poll, and relax his jaw, making him draw his head in.



Diagram 2 (D).

The mildest form of a snaffle—a straight mouthpiece which will lie level on the tongue.

However, its jointed mouthpiece gives a snaffle a nut-cracker action, which can pinch a sensitive mouth; therefore the mildest type of bit is an

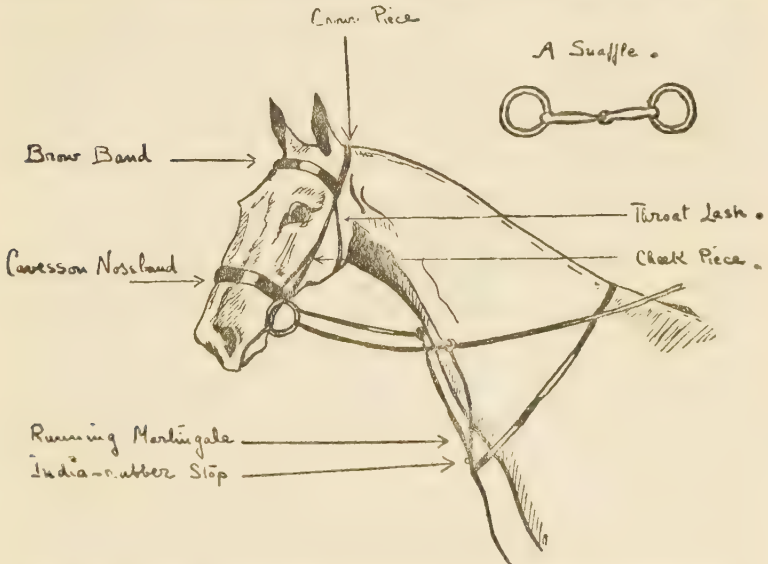


Diagram 2 (E). A SNAFFLE-BRidle AND A RUNNING MARTINGALE

unjointed snaffle, i.e. two rings connected by a straight mouthpiece which will lie level on the tongue. A half-moon snaffle is the next mildest form of bit.

A horse said to possess a "snaffle mouth" means

that he has a good mouth and is easily controlled. Further, a snaffle is also a very safe and simple device to ride in, whereas a curbed bit can be a dangerous element in the hands of a novice.

THE DOUBLE-BRIDLE.

First in the category of bits and curbs should come the double-bridle, which is a very excellent bit, consisting of a combination of a bit and curb, with a bridoon. It is by no means a severe bit if the cheek-pieces of the bit are of the medium length.

The only drawback to the double-bridle is that it entails two separate mouthpieces being in the horse's mouth, viz. the bit and the bridoon. The most prevalent pattern of bit used with a double-bridle is known as the Weymouth, but other suitable bits to be used in conjunction with a bridoon are the Ward Union and the Banbury, both of which have sliding mouthpieces.

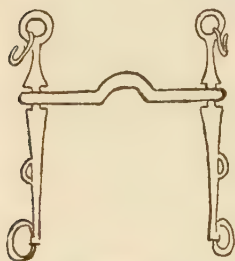


Diagram 3.
WARD UNION USED
WITH A BRIDOOON

In adjusting the double-bridle one should see that the bridoon should touch the corner of the mouth, but should be low enough not to wrinkle the lips.

The correct position for the bit is one inch above the tushes in a horse's mouth, and as the mare has not got tushes the corresponding position in her mouth for the bit would be two inches above the corner teeth.

The severity of the bit depends on the length of the cheek-piece, the length of the curb, and whether the mouthpiece is one with a port.

The difference between a mouthpiece with a port and one without is that the former rests chiefly on the bars of the mouth, and the latter rests on the tongue and on the bars and is less severe.

Therefore, with the port mouthpiece, all the pressure is taken on the bars, whereas without the port the tongue can assist by absorbing some of the pressure. Again, a high port is apt to bruise the roof of the horse's mouth when brought into play.

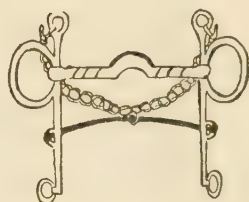


Diagram 4.

PELHAM BIT

Mouthpiece with port, curb-chain, and lip-strap. Note mouthpiece is "twisted."

The majority of bits are rough or "twisted" on one side, and smooth on the other side of the

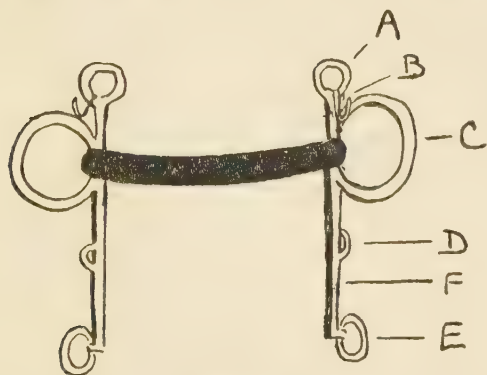


Diagram 5.

THE HALF-MOON PELHAM. VULCANITE MOUTHPIECE

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. The eye for bridle. | B. Curb-chain hook. |
| C. Ring for bridoon-rein. | D. The eye for lip-strap |
| E. Ring for bit- or curb-rein. | F. Cheek-piece. |

mouthpiece, and care should be taken to see that the smooth side is next to the horse's tongue.

It should be stated that the horse's tongue should

always be under the bit. It is a very bad fault when a horse has a habit of getting his tongue over the mouthpiece and it should be checked by tying



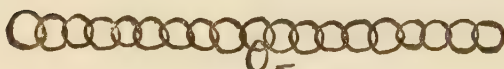
Diagram 5.

a broad leather bootlace to the junction of the mouthpiece and in the centre of the lace: both ends of the lace are then taken out from each side of the mouth and passed up round the muzzle, where they are tied and then secured to the nose-band. Do not use string as it will cut into and chafe the horse's lips, and irritate him.

ADJUSTMENT OF THE CURB-CHAIN.

The curb-chain must be adjusted carefully; it should fit in comfortably to the chin-groove when

*A Curb Chain Correctly Twisted up.
Curb chains average between 17 to 19 links*



Loose link for lip strap.

An unravelled Curb Chain



Diagram 6.

the curb-reins are applied. Too tight a curb-chain will chafe a horse's mouth, which ultimately will have the effect of deadening the horse's jaw, and therefore making him hard-mouthed, which may eventually render him unmanageable.

Great care should be taken to twist up the curb-chain corkscrew-wise, so that the links will lie flat in the chin-groove. Remember, an unravelled curb-chain causes torture to a horse's jaw when applied. In fastening up the curb-chain on the near side, always hook up the end link first, and then take it in at the correct link. This will keep the spare links down in position, and prevent them dangling about. In the centre of every curb-chain there is a loose link or ring attached.

This link is intended for the lip-strap to pass

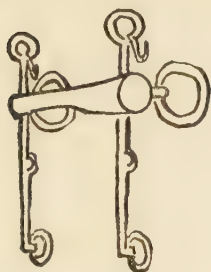


Diagram 7. THE BORWICK

A particularly nice type of bit. It has a large cylindrical mouthpiece made of hollow steel to avoid too much weight of metal in the mouth. The manner in which the ends of the mouthpiece extend beyond the cheeks of the bit will prevent the lips being nipped and lessen the likelihood of chafes.

through, and prevent either cheek-piece of the bit from being dragged into the horse's mouth ; further, it prevents either side of the cheek-piece from getting twisted round the wrong way.

In order to facilitate the adjustment of the curb-chain and to insure that it will lie quite flat when applied remember the simple rule to keep the thumb up when hooking up the first link and to keep the thumb down when hooking up the selected link. This method will prevent the chain becoming unravelled in the process.

Other well-known types of bits are the Pelham, with the straight, jointed, and port mouthpieces (Diagram 4), and the Half-moon Pelham (Diagram 5);

the Rugby Pelham, which has a link between the mouthpiece and the ring for the bridoon-rein; the Borwick (Diagram 7), which has a large cylindrical mouthpiece made of hollow steel to avoid weight; the IX Lancer bit, and last, but not least, the Universal pattern Army Reversible, which is an admirable bit and one which is often found most satisfactory when other bits have failed.

Bits should always be made of hand-forged or



Diagram 8. THE GAG SNAFFLE

stainless steel for solidity. Nickel bits are not so durable or reliable, and are liable to get smashed and bent, and usually split at the extremities of the mouthpiece. Vulcanite covering to the mouthpiece is often found very satisfactory, and some horses go very well in bits which have been covered with this substance or in rubber.

THE GAG SNAFFLE.

There are some horses whose mouths have become so hard and callous from rough usage that

they become confirmed pullers, and bore at their bits to such an extent that no matter what bit they are ridden in, there is a sense of utter discomfort, which makes riding them most fatiguing. For the inveterate puller, and a horse which takes hold on every possible occasion, a gag snaffle will be found to be an excellent remedy. It is a very simple contraption, and is easily adjusted, but it should only be used by those with light hands.

The Kineton nose-band is very good for controlling a fractious and impetuous horse, upon which the various assortment of bits and curbs makes no impression.

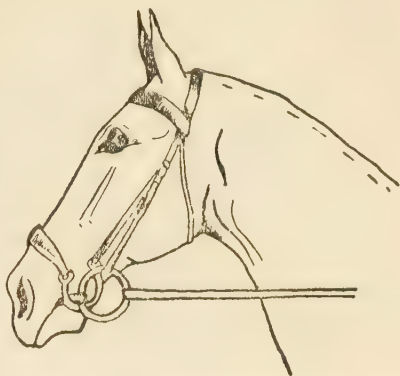


Diagram 9. THE KINETON NOSE-BAND

Further, it is a particularly good remedy for a hard-mouthed horse, which pokes his nose.

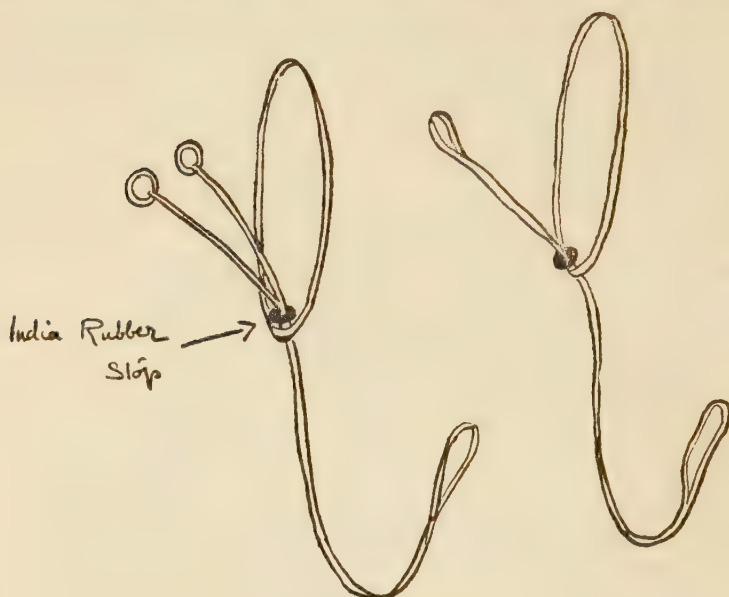
This nose-band, which is simple to adjust, should be used with a jointed snaffle; it is not a severe device. The writer has found it most satisfactory, and in several instances has used it with pulling ponies in the hands of children, which they were unable to control or manage in a bit.

MARTINGALES, THEIR USES AND THEIR ADJUSTMENT.

There are three kinds of martingales :

- I. The Standing Martingale.
- II. The Running Martingale.
- III. The Irish Martingale.

I. The standing martingale, which is used as a check to prevent the horse from throwing up his head and hitting the rider in the face, or carrying it too high, is a good remedy for star-gazing, and for horses which have ewe-necks. It is attached to the Cavesson nose-band, and it can be used with



Diagrams 10 and 11.

RUNNING MARTINGALE AND STANDING MARTINGALE

a snaffle or a double-bridle. Its action is independent of the rider's hands.

In adjusting the standing martingale, see that it is of sufficient length to allow the horse to carry his head in the proper position, i.e. his muzzle high enough to be level with the top of his withers.

It is also an assistance with a horse which jumps with a hollow back, as it checks his head going up and makes him arch his back.

Further, it gives the rider a certain amount of control. This type of martingale is used universally on the polo ground.

II. The running martingale is attached to the reins by rings, through which they pass. Its object is to keep a horse's head in the right position, and keep him straight when riding at a fence. It is an excellent device for a horse which throws its head about and its action is dependent on the rider's hands: a pull on one rein being instantly conveyed to the other through its medium.

When used with a double-bridle, the rings of the running martingale should be attached to the bit or curb-rein, and never to the bridoon-rein, for the following reasons:

A. The object of the snaffle or bridoon is to keep a horse's head up, and when played in the corners of the mouth it will prevent a horse from leaning on the rider's hands.

B. Should we, therefore, attach the martingale rings to the bridoon-reins instead of the bit-reins, we will be counteracting the whole theory of the correct use of the bridoon-reins when riding in a double-bridle. As the whole object of the bit is to make the horse flex or bend his neck, and relax his jaw to the pressure of the bit-reins, it is obvious

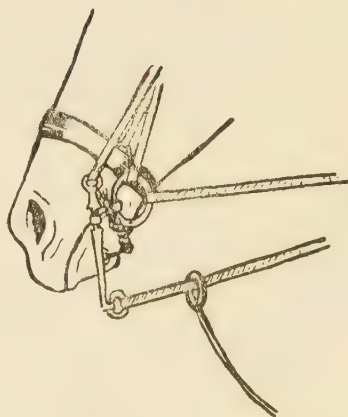


Diagram 12. DANGEROUS

Here is the ring of the martingale larger than the ring on the cheek-piece of the bit. It will slip over and get caught.

that the martingale should function on the bit-reins and not interfere with the action of the bridoon. It should be so adjusted that when the rider's hands are in the right position, and the horse's head carriage is correct, it has no bearing on the bit-rein.

Care should be taken when adjusting the running martingale to see that the rings of the martingale are smaller than the small rings on the cheek-pieces of the curbed bit, otherwise they will undoubtedly slip over and possibly get jammed. One can

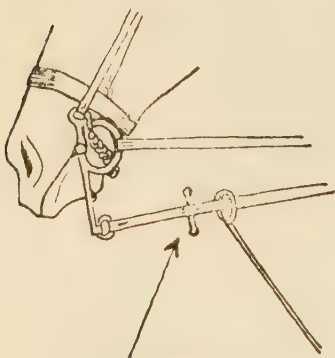


Diagram 13.

PERMANENT BONE STOPS ON REIN

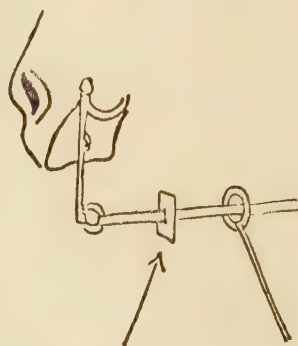


Diagram 14.

TEMPORARY LEATHER STOP

visualise the dangerous predicament when negotiating a fence, with the horse's head bent round, and his bit caught in the ring of the martingale. Such a situation, which has been the writer's experience, is by no means uncommon.

The other alternative is to have "stops" on the bit-rein between the bit and the martingale rings to prevent the possibility of the above situation arising, which is simply courting disaster. Sometimes these "stops" are made of bone and sewn on to the reins, however, square pieces of leather, which

a saddler will cut out in a few minutes, will serve the purpose admirably.

There are, however, running martingales which instead of having rings have "D"-shaped slots with rollers through which the reins just pass; to use this pattern martingale it is necessary to have

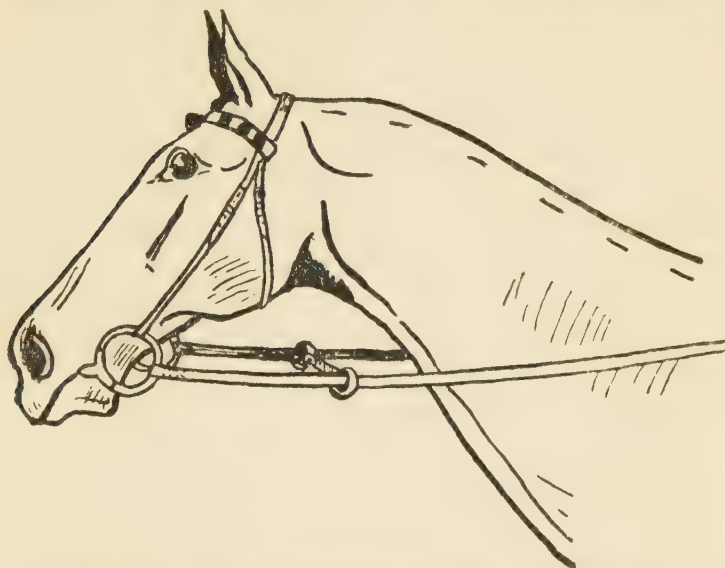


Diagram 15. AN IRISH MARTINGALE OR "RACING RINGS"

Called for brevity "Rings" in the racing world. Note coloured brow band which is permissible only on the race-course.

a bit with the small rings at the ends of the cheek-pieces turned the other way, so as to facilitate the martingale running along the reins smoothly.

With the standing and running martingales, the strap which passes between the horse's legs should be kept comfortably taut; accidents often occur through the strap being slack and the horse getting caught up in it, or putting his knee through it when he pecks on landing over a fence. A rubber ring

attached to this strap above its entry into the slot in the neck-strap will entirely eliminate this danger (See Diagrams 2 (E), 10, and 11.)

III. The Irish martingale consists of two rings which are connected together by four inches of leather, and through which the reins pass, and its action is that of communication from one rein to the other similar to the running martingale.

Its object is to keep a horse steady without interfering unduly with the freedom of his head carriage. It acts as a check, and gives more control over an animal which swings his head from side to side. Further, it prevents a horse which throws his head about from getting the reins over his head. In the case of a toss, it prevents the reins from flying over the horse's head. The Irish martingale is almost as prevalent on the race-course as the standing martingale is on the polo ground.

Standing and running martingales likewise foster control when used in conjunction with a snaffle-bridle, and they should always be used on horses which get their heads right up, or toss their heads about from side to side.

They are safe devices with snaffles in the hands of novices and children who get frightened when they are able to look right down the forehead of the animal they are endeavouring to ride. In nine cases out of ten this means that they are about to lose, or have already lost control.

CHAPTER XI

SADDLERY

SELECTING AND FITTING A SADDLE.

THE subject of the saddle and its selection can hardly be treated with sufficient importance. Time spent and care taken in choosing and fitting a saddle will be amply repaid in the long run, and the money spent in purchasing a saddle made by a reputable firm will be money well spent, not only from the point of view of the material which has been put into the saddle and the good craftsmanship expended, but also as a guard against the sore back menace—the nightmare of the horseman—which may throw a horse out of work for some of the best weeks in the hunting season, to his owner's tantalization and disgruntlement.

Good saddles can only be made by craftsmen who have years of experience behind them, and who have studied their trade beyond the actual making of the saddle, for it is essential that they should be able to cater for the variance in the conformation of each horse's back.

The ideal and most desirable plan is to have a saddle made for the individual horse. This is not always practicable, but in every case the structure of the horse's back must be considered, and a horse should only be ridden in a saddle which fits. To

ride a horse with high lean withers in a saddle made for a horse with low thick withers would be simply to court disaster.

The following are the salient points in saddle-fitting :

- I. The withers must not be pinched by the front arch of the saddle.
- II. There must be no possibility of the front arch pressing down or resting on the top of the withers (this is liable to happen with old saddles, which invariably will be found to have their trees spread).
- III. The horse's spine must be free from pressure. (Particular care should be taken in the case of horses which have a tendency to being “Roach-backed.”)

The objective to aim at in saddle-fitting is to have the rider's weight evenly distributed in the saddle, and to avoid any likelihood of an injury from either friction or pressure.

To actually determine whether a saddle fits or not, it is necessary to test it with a man sitting on it. Remember to avoid any unnecessary padding or packing of the panels of the saddle, because the closer one is to the horse the better one will ride and the firmer one's grip will be. There is nothing more comfortable than being able to sit well into your horse, and it will be easier to grip, as there will be more resilience, being closer to the animal than if separated by cumbersome and heavily padded panels.

A second-hand hunting-saddle, made by a reputable firm, can be picked up in good condition,

complete with stirrup-leather, stirrup-irons and girths, for about five pounds (which is just a third the price of a new one) at Tattersall's Monday sales in Knightsbridge, and it will be more comfortable to ride in than in a new saddle. (In purchasing a second-hand saddle, care should be taken to see that the tree has not spread.)

The types of saddle which Sowter, Whippy, and Owen turn out are admirable in every way. Never purchase a saddle with knee rolls, which are useless encumbrances.

GIRTHS.

It is a choice between leather girths and webbing girths; cord or string girths are not now used to the extent they were once. Leather girths are without doubt the best, particularly the kind made in one piece which folds in three with two buckles at each end. Leather girths, however, need much attention in order to keep them soft and supple, for nothing is more liable to chafe a horse and cause a girth gall than a leather girth, which has been allowed to get harsh and hard from dried sweat and dirt from lack of proper attention. Girths vary in length from two feet six inches to about three feet. Care should be taken that they fit properly, and are long enough to buckle well up the girth tabs, so as to obtain ample protection underneath from the saddle panel.

Should they be buckled on the last holes, there will be a great risk of a chafe owing to lack of protection against the reverse side of the buckle.

The girth must be sufficiently tight, so as to keep the saddle in place: it should be tightened gradually

and without violence, and care should be taken to see that the skin is not wrinkled anywhere, particularly under that part of the saddle panel immediately beneath the girths. The undergirth should always be fastened and tightened first, a loose undergirth with a tighter one on top will cause wrinkles—which undoubtedly will result in a gall.

Young horses and horses just up from grass are more liable to girth galls, owing to the fact that they are in soft condition—in such cases a piece of sheepskin around the girth will afford good protection.

STIRRUP-IRONS AND LEATHERS.

Stirrup-irons should be made of hand-forged steel in preference to nickel, which are liable to get broken or bent. Care should be taken to see that the stirrup-iron fits properly and is not too narrow in order to avoid the possibility of being dragged should one be given a fall. Stirrups with the flat spade-shaped or “ Persian ” sides, are the most comfortable, and if the stirrup-iron is made to curve away from the leg at the top it will add greatly to comfort, particularly when on a long day with the feet shoved “ home ” in the irons. Should the “ tread ” on the soles of the irons have worn away the farrier can very simply re-roughen them. The question of stirrup-leathers is an important one, as a broken leather may cause a bad fall.

Stirrup-leathers should be shortened occasionally by the saddler about an inch at the buckle ends, to bring the wear on fresh holes, and likewise the pressure of the iron at different places.

Should it be necessary to have extra holes added to your leathers, on no account attempt to bore one with a penknife, or allow a groom to do so. Additional holes must be punched by a saddler, who will do so with the correct implement, and so ensure that the grain of the leather is not spoilt. A jagged hole or cut will cause the leather to split right across which will give way with pressure.

NUMNAHS.

A numnah is used to give extra padding to a saddle, and to prevent a sore back. The felt numnah is very useful in preventing a saddle slipping and assists to make the saddle fit the horse.

The felt numnah should be properly secured to the saddle to prevent it working back which numnahs invariably do. There are also sheepskin numnahs. The snag, however, against numnahs is that as they fit close over the horse's spine they block up the air passage which should be allowed along the spine between the horse and the saddle.

BRIDLES.

Bridles should be made of the best quality bridle leather. The bits should always be made of steel, and they should be sewn into the bridle, not buckled or studded. The brow-band should be of the same leather as the bridle, coloured brow-bands being absolutely tabooed. The bridle should have a nose-band which should be fairly broad, the Cavesson pattern, with its own separate head stall, which is depicted in all the diagrams, should be used.

A nose-band is essential for a standing martingale.

The reins should likewise be sewn to the bits, there being one buckle only and that at the extremity of the bit-reins, to enable them to be run through the rings of the running martingale. The reins should be of average width, neither too narrow to cut into your hands, nor too thick to be cumbersome. It is essential that the hand grips of the reins are kept soft and pliable, and on no account should they be polished.

The most suitable bridle for the hunting-field is undoubtedly the double-bridle (bit and bridoon) with medium length cheek-pieces as it fosters control, and if ridden in properly is not a severe bit—in fact the horse can be ridden on the bridoon-reins alone, applying slight tension on the bit-rein when the situation demands it.

With a well-balanced horse which has good head carriage, a snaffle can be used for hacking and exercise, but it is not an ideal bit for hunting, as it does not give the degree of control required.

If it is desired to ride in a snaffle and at the same time extract the maximum amount of control with a high-couraged horse that goes well up in his bit, ride with double reins on the snaffle, and with a running martingale attached to the lower reins.

Should one ride in a single-reined snaffle, plaited hand-grips on the reins will be found very practical, as they prevent the reins slipping through the hands; rubber hand-grips, on the other hand, are rather out of place when hunting, being pretentious as they savour of the race-course.

SELECTION OF A SIDE-SADDLE.

The question of a side-saddle is an all-important one, as it either means comfort or discomfort to the horse. A sore back will be inevitable should there be any element of discomfort. So again the conformation of the horse has to be considered, and it stands to reason that the side-saddle which fits the horse with high lean withers and a narrow back, will not be suitable for a low thick-withered animal, which is inclined to have a hollow back. Your horse may have normal conformation with nice withers and a well ribbed-up back, which should carry the average side-saddle, as made by the best firms. However, if you are purchasing a new side-saddle, have it made to fit your horse, and made to fit yourself—this is equally as important as the fitting to the horse's back.

The rider should be measured for a side-saddle, as her height, and whether she adopts a long stirrup-leather with the left leg moderately straight will determine the exact position and angle of the lower, or "leaping" pommel.¹ There are also various patterns of pommels, and Messrs. Champion and Wilton, who are specialists in side-saddles, recommend that tall ladies should choose the broad or triangular pommels, as they provide more thigh support and give greater comfort in the saddle than

¹ Some side-saddles will be found to have two holes in order to allow the leaping head to be altered to suit the individual rider. The leaping head pommel is always screwed into the saddle, and screwed in from left to right, the idea being that should it not have been screwed in properly the tendency of the pressure of the rider's knee against it will be to prevent it unscrewing any further, which would be likely to happen should it be screwed in from right to left.

they could obtain with the ordinary and narrow-shaped pommels.

A balance strap can be dispensed with as it is quite unnecessary, particularly with the modern type of side-saddle.

Unless one is using a martingale, when the balance strap can be inserted through the martingale loop together with the girths, there is the danger of the balance strap slipping back.

Balance straps also tend to upset horses unaccustomed to the side-saddle, and are apt to get caught going through narrow gate-ways.

Should a balance strap be desired there is a new type which is attached to the girths. Being much shorter than the old pattern it dispenses with the strap going underneath the horse, and is therefore much more satisfactory.

CARE OF SADDLERY.

The leather work of all saddlery should be kept soft, particularly the seats and flaps of saddles and the hand-grips of the reins, which should never be polished. Leather girths should be kept soft and supple with grease.

All parts of saddlery affected by sweat from the horse should be sponged with clean cold water, and then saddle soap should be applied.

Plastering grease or saddle soap on the face of leather does little good, as it only cakes and congeals and does not work in ; saddle soap must be rubbed in properly. Leather work must not be washed in hot water or left in front of a fire to dry, as this destroys its durability.

Saddles and numnahs should be aired or dried



MEET OF THE FERNIE AT THE LANTONS NEAR MARKET HARBOROUGH, NOVEMBER 1904

by placing them exposed to the sun or in the wind.

Girths need special attention, particularly leather girths, which if not kept clean and supple will cause girth galls. Webbing girths should be dried, and the mud should be brushed out.

All the "tack" should be taken to pieces frequently, and carefully cleaned. It is very important that the buckles on the cheek-pieces of the bridle should be undone and cleaned, for the leather under a buckle is liable to get corroded and will perish if not carefully watched, cleaned, and "fed."

Steel bits and stirrup-irons should be cleaned and dried instantly on return to stables, to save subsequent labour if done before rust has had time to form. Rust on steel bits and stirrup-irons can be removed by silver sand and water, and finished off with a burnisher to give a good shine.¹

Every care should be taken of a saddle; it must not be treated roughly or dropped, as a broken or spread front arch may result. Rough or careless usage of saddlery should not be tolerated.

Particular care should be taken of a side-saddle, and grooms should be warned never to turn a horse round in a narrow stall with a side-saddle, as such a movement is apt to spread the tree.

If a horse which is about to be saddled in a side-saddle is in a stall, he should be turned round in his stall before the saddle is placed on his back, and can then await his rider in pillar chains.

¹ Should it be found necessary to store or pack steel stirrups and bits and to prevent rusting, smear well in vaseline, and then cover completely by winding long strips of brown paper round them in puttee fashion.

THE SADDLE-ROOM AND ITS FITTINGS.

It is essential that the saddle-room should have plenty of light, and that it should be dry in order (1) to facilitate the cleaning of the “tack,” and (2) to keep the saddlery from getting damp and the steelwork from rust. A saddle-room is a necessary appanage to a stable, and preferably it should have an entry into the stable, or a covered way, in order to avoid taking clean “tack” out in the wet to saddle up. A fire or a good stove is essential for heating the room. Besides, it is not fair to expect a groom to work in the cold; the “tack” will be all the better cleaned when the man can clean it in comfort. To make the groom comfortable in his saddle-room is to ensure the saddlery being properly kept.

Next to well-kept stables with their perfectly groomed inmates whose glossy coats reflect ideal stable management, comes the saddle-room, which can and should present another pleasing sight.

Every saddle should have its own saddle bracket, with the bridle hanging immediately underneath on the bridle bracket. This method saves time in sorting out the correct bridle to use with the individual horse, instead of having the bridles hanging up separately and away from their saddles.

Martingales too, if used, should be hung up with their bridles. The stirrup-irons, after they have been cleaned, should be run up the leathers and the girths laid across the seat before the saddle is put up on its bracket.

A couple of good “S” hooks should hang from the ceiling, in order to facilitate the cleaning of

bridles, reins and stirrup-leathers, and bridles, after use, should be hung on these hooks for cleaning before they are hung in their proper place.

A good stout saddle-stand is another necessary adjunct to enable the saddles to be properly cleaned. For the bits and stirrup-irons which are not in use and which are not sewn on the bridles a glass-doored case lined with green baize will be invaluable in keeping off rust, besides giving a very smart appearance and a pleasurable one to its owner should it be decorated with prize-winning rosettes as they are annexed at the various Horse Shows. It should be hung over the fire-place so as to extract full benefit from the warmth. Such a case, indeed, has come to be regarded as the groom's overmantel.

CHAPTER XII

HUNTING

RIDING to hounds is without a doubt the ultimate objective of every keen horseman, and the manner in which one rides to hounds depends entirely on the standard of our horsemanship, the security of our seat, which can only be attained by constant practice and thorough groundwork in the riding-school or *manège*, and the capability and handiness of the horse one is riding. Naturally as we develop a firmer seat and gain more confidence and experience with horses all the more shall our keenness and enjoyment increase in the hunting-field. Practical experience is the best method for gaining knowledge. However, lest the novice should make himself conspicuous by either his behaviour through ignorance or incongruity of kit on his initial day with hounds this chapter is being written.

First of all it is well to impress on the "young entry" that the majority of horses, particularly those which have been hunted, even if they are quite ancient veterans of the chase, take a new lease of life when they are once more with hounds, and that the "old screw" or "slug" which one has been hacking about the countryside daily may suddenly become "all on his toes," snatch at his

bridle, and become generally fidgety when within the proximity of hounds, for in every horse there is inherent a love of hunting. For the novice it is, therefore, essential that he should be sufficiently capable to manage and control his horse properly in the open and be able to ride him over fences before he aspires to the hunting-field.

The best schooling-ground for the novice for gaining experience at the initial stage is undoubtedly to be found out cub-hunting. Here the rudiments of the chase, behaviour in the hunting-field, and the scientific side of hunting, i.e. hound work, can be carefully studied in the early autumn mornings under the ideal conditions which usually prevail at this time of year. Any one who is desirous of learning cannot fail to glean a vast amount of information and instruction about hunting and hunting-field etiquette out cub-hunting. Moreover, members of the Hunt are ever ready to assist the uninitiated with advice as to what to do, and equally as important, what hounds are doing. Remember that a very strong camaraderie exists between horsemen and that they are always ready to give a "leg up" to the novice.

Out cub-hunting one can get a valuable insight into the manners of the horse one intends to ride out hunting when the season proper commences. Every aspirant to the hunting-field proper should, therefore, take every available advantage of cub-hunting, which is an invaluable "preliminary canter" to fox-hunting. The early reveille, which attendance at the usual 6 a.m. meets necessitates, will repay one a hundredfold.

If one is going to ride a hireling, it is advisable to

take the horse out hacking before embarking on one's hunting career, and try him over jumps. Hunting centres or districts will always boast some good hunting stables where a reliable horse can be hired for a day's hunting. The novice is advised to inform the proprietor of the standard of his horsemanship in order that the right type of horse may be selected ; neither should one be ashamed to ask for a quiet, confidential animal. The usual charge for a horse for a day with the average pack is two guineas, though of course in the shires it is considerably more, and half-a-guinea for cub-hunting fixtures.

However, the novice will be well advised to commence his hunting with the smaller packs where equally good sport can be enjoyed. If one rides a hireling there should be no need to worry about the preliminaries in preparing the horse for the day's hunt or the tack. The hunting stable should see that the horse is saddled and bridled properly, but at the same time do not depend on the groom ; see for yourself that the bridle fits properly, that the throat lash is not too tight, that the curb-chain is properly adjusted and turned, not unevenly, and the correct length, to allow it to fit in flat and closely to the chin-groove when pressure is brought to bear on the bit or curb rein. Be careful that the saddle fits and that the saddle-tree or front arch of the saddle is well clear of the top of the withers ; this is most important for with old saddles the tree will invariably be found to have “ spread.” This will result in the horse developing sore withers, for as the day goes on with our weight in the saddle the front arch will have worked down, and will be

coming more in contact if not actually resting or pressing down on the top of our unfortunate horse's withers. Test your girths before moving off—don't leave this to the groom or you may experience the very demoralising feeling of your saddle slipping back over the horse's loins, or equally as bad, slipping right round should you lose your balance when jumping. Therefore test the girths, bearing in mind that all horses instinctively "blow themselves out" when being first girthed up in the stables. See also that the saddle panels are not rucked anywhere, particularly and immediately under the girth buckles.

Pay particular attention to your stirrup-irons; on no account ride in stirrups which are on the tight side, otherwise you may get your feet jammed in them, and should you come to grief there is always the danger of being dragged, a most dreadful sensation for any one who has been unfortunate enough to experience this predicament. The irons should be roomy and weighty enough to swing clear should we take a toss or come a purler with our horse. To this day the writer recalls vividly an incident in his youth when a Connemara pony careered across Irish pastures with his foot firmly wedged in a small stirrup-iron. Small stirrups should therefore be the *bête noire* of every rider.

Run your eye over the stirrup-leathers, adjust them properly and tuck the ends back and under the leathers. With horses get in the habit of never depending on any one, and never be satisfied with any one's word regarding your tack. Remember you and your horse are out for a day's hunting and for pleasure, not for a toss due to a broken leather, or

to cause your horse a sore back from a bad or misfitting saddle.

Naturally the hunting stable proprietor is all out to give you satisfaction, and incidentally to save his horse. However, he may be a very busy man and at times have to rely on his strappers. Strappers are a vagarious breed, some being highly efficient, whilst others are deplorably lazy and slovenly. Therefore, don't swing into your saddle and clatter off to the meet haphazardly, but look your horse over thoroughly before mounting.

Always start punctually for the meet; do not order your horse hours before the time you intend to move off, else if it is a very cold morning he may be extremely fidgety by being kept waiting, if one is going to hack on to the meet, and the novice is always advised to hack to the meet at it gets one nicely into the saddle and on terms with your horse before a day's hunting. Moreover, the tarmac surface does not make for pleasurable riding, particularly with fidgety horses and with the roads infested with motors.

Remember in hacking to a meet a horse should only be walked or jogged. Consider the horse, therefore, by being punctual and starting off in good time to enable one to arrive nicely on time at the meet.

Have a good map with you of the country in which you intend to hunt. These are best got from Edward Stanford, Ltd., of Long Acre, who make a speciality of making up maps of the various Hunts in a form convenient for carrying in the pocket.

Study your map and take the shortest way, avoid

as far as possible the main traffic arteries without making detours. Keep religiously to grass verges or bridle paths if such accommodating routes exist.

On arrival at the meet remain well on the outskirts, don't ride slap into the midst of groups of horsemen or press forward near hounds. It is a heinous offence to kick or walk on hounds, therefore use discretion and caution when in their proximity. If your horse is a hireling the owner will have bridled him in his accustomed bit. A double-bridle is undoubtedly the best as it is a bridle which affords the maximum of control, consisting as it does of a bit with a curb and the bridoon. Therefore we can ride our horse on either the bit or the bridoon-reins according to whichever method suits him best

If the running martingale is used make sure that the rings are attached to the bit-reins, and also that the rings on the martingale are not too large, or they will slip over the rings on the bit and a bad accident may occur.

It is not unusual to see the running martingale attached to the bridoon-reins; however, this latter method is entirely wrong and counteracts the whole theory of the correct use of the bridoon-rein. (See Chapter X explaining the use and adjustment of martingales.)

Sometimes one will find a snaffle-bridle allocated by the stables, which is a nice easy device to ride in, the big-ringed snaffle being a bit which some horses go very kindly in. However, snaffle-bridles in the hunting-field are a rarity, except in Ireland. When hunting in a snaffle it is advisable to have double reins, for single reins are sometimes known to break.

Again, double reins give a more even distribution of weight in the hands, and therefore foster a lighter feeling with the horse's mouth.

But do remember that it is absolutely essential for the rider to have perfect control of his mount in the hunting-field: riding a horse which becomes unmanageable with hounds courts disaster, and one of the things to be avoided at all costs is making a nuisance of oneself at covert side by kicking or plunging about, and equally when hounds are running by your horse bolting and careering into the pack or barging headlong into a crowded gateway or gap.

Never ride in a coloured brow-band—this part of a bridle must always be uniform with the rest of the bridle. White brow-bands are permissible only on a head-stall in stables. Always avoid anything conspicuous.

A flask is a very necessary adjunct to comfort when hunting, as a drop of brandy may be an invaluable *corps revivor* after a hard day when one is soaked through on a long hack home.¹ Sandwich cases are very unnecessary, and a roomy pocket will answer equally as well as the somewhat cumbersome sandwich case which is only an appendage to add extra weight to your saddle and chafe the horse. In inclement weather a light mackintosh can be rolled very tightly and strapped across the front arch of your saddle by means of two small straps which can

¹ A man's flask is strapped in its holster on to the near side of the front arch of the saddle, and a lady's flask is strapped on the off side front of the side-saddle.

A small bottle of iodine should always be carried in the pocket out hunting for first-aid treatment in case the horse might get a cut from barbed wire or from a bad thorn. Iodine can now be obtained in unbreakable tubes suitable for carrying in the pocket.

be affixed to the "D's" of the saddle, which will always be found just in front of the stirrup-bars.

As to the rider's turnout, "rat-catcher" is absolutely correct, and is recognised as the "undress" kit of the hunting-field. Unless one is already in possession of the regulation black coat and top hat, and the novice is hardly likely to have this outfit already in his wardrobe, nor should he don them during the preliminary stage in his hunting career, one rides to hounds in what is termed "rat-catcher." As rat-catcher allows for a certain amount of latitude in taste by the wearer, one at the same time must conform to certain rules and be careful not to exceed the limits of decorum by wearing any kind of garment which is of a "loud" or eccentric flavour, or likely to make one conspicuous and incur the ridicule of other followers. First of all comes our head-gear, and this is a simple matter, as the "bowler" is *de rigueur*, apart from being the correct head-dress, and from its smart appearance when mounted, a good strong "bowler" acts as a concussion absorber should one take a toss.

To give proper protection the "bowler" should have a good formidable top of "crash" calibre. All good hatters turn out a hunting bowler which ranges in price from 30s. to 35s. The Lock pattern is without doubt the best, combining smartness with solidity. Whether one wears a hat-guard is immaterial; however, it is most maddening to have to go back and fetch one's hat which has got brushed off by a bush or overhanging branch when negotiating a fence during a run. The hat should be worn well forward on the forehead to derive full benefit of its protection; do not emulate the "halo"

fashion, as this latter method is worse than useless, the hat invariably coming off when the rider bites mother earth. Compare the methods of wearing a hat as depicted in Diagram 1 and Diagram 2 in Chapter III.

The coat should be well fitting and cut for riding with a slight waist, but not exaggerated to wasp-like dimensions even if the figure allows it. One or two vents are correct, but this matter can be left to the rider's discretion. But a vent or two vents there must be in a riding-coat, for without them the coat gets rucked up at the back of the cantle of the saddle and presents a grotesque appearance; besides being slovenly, a coat without a vent at the back is a most uncomfortable garment in the saddle. The coat should neither be too long nor too short—one must strike a happy medium. Avoid the sports type of coat with innumerable buttoned pockets of military pattern, or any kind of a belt, or suggestion of one at the back, which screams of the golf course. The “rat-catcher” coat must have a clean back. Only three pockets should be visible on the outside, one ordinary breast-pocket for a handkerchief and two side-pockets; these latter are best cut on the slant. Poacher's pockets on the inside of the skirt will be found most useful and accommodating for sandwiches or a map. Have the coat made so that it will button up at the neck if so required, and the tailor will attach a small tab under the left lapel to make this feasible.

The “rat-catcher” coat should be made from a closely woven material to keep out the wind, for one is often subjected to a biting east wind in

February and March, which penetrates loosely woven textures and which can be particularly hostile should the coat be already rain-sodden! Avoid bright cloths, loud checks or very light fawns—a dark brown, or grey tweed, or a quiet heather mixture is best. The approximate price of a coat of this description is between six and seven guineas.

In “rat-catcher” a soft collar and tie is absolutely correct: a white stock may be worn, but it is difficult to adjust for the uninitiated, therefore it and its intricacies can be left until one goes out in “pukka” hunting apparel.

Breeches should always be cut by an expert—give firms who advertise cheap garments a wide berth. Breeches so purchased, even when made to measure, will be found ill-fitting and will never last. Only a craftsman can cut breeches to last and be workman-like. Avoid breeches which stand out in festoons from the thighs, but don't have them, in contrast, too close-fitting. Have breeches cut for the saddle and carefully fitted.

Have buttoned knees, never laced, the buttons being slightly on the inside and immediately below the knee, with the seam running directly and diagonally down the knee-cap. This gives double strength at the knee, where great pressure is ever brought to bear. Cavalry twill material in khaki, chocolate, or fawns is the best, and looks best. It is advisable to have a good roomy seat for comfort. Buckskin strappings are essential. You cannot take sufficient care over the fit of your breeches. However, a good West-End tailor, or better still a country tailor in a hunting district, will often be

found beyond reproach. Four and a half to five guineas is the usual price for riding-breeches.

The firm of Bernard Weatherill cut good breeches and Jodhpores at a very reasonable price, and can be relied upon for detail.

Now comes the most expensive item in our turn-out, viz. black hunting boots. These may cost anything from eight to ten guineas with trees. If we put pride in our pocket we may be able to run a well-fitting pair to earth from a good dealer in misfits which have been made by a first-class firm.

Boots cut by Tom Hill, of Knightsbridge, can be depended upon for smartness and durability.

Black hunting-boots must be absolutely plain with no lacing of any kind, or buckled device at the top, apart from the usual leather garters which keep the boots up and the breeches in position and prevent them rucking. Be sure and see that they come up well under the knees, for boots cut too low in the leg look grotesque.

The boot-garters should be worn with the buckles well to the front and just inside the shin bone, between the second and third buttons of the breeches. Remember that the ends of the garters should always point outwards.

Hunting-boots must have trees, else they lose their shape, particularly after a wetting, and are then apt to wrinkle and sag over the ankles. When one starts hunting regularly, it will be necessary to have two pairs of hunting-boots in case one pair is wet: nothing is more depressing or uncomfortable than getting into an already sodden pair of hunting-boots. It is sufficient to lower the morale of the most enthusiastic fox-hunter to don wet boots.

Spurs are also necessary out hunting, and give a finished look to a hunting-boot, which without them, apart from being incorrect, gives a naked appearance. Spurs must be worn high up and over the counter of the boot—on no account have them strapped down on the heels. It will be remarked that so far the writer has only lightly touched on the subject of spurs in this book, for spurs should only be worn or used by the expert horseman or horsewoman, and quite a number of excellent horsemen never ride in them except in the hunting-field. However, when hunting they are part of our kit: use blunt spurs with very short necks—remove the sharp rowels with a wire-cutter in case one should spur the horse by mistake. It is possible to purchase spurs with blunt ends, and this type of spur serves the purpose admirably.

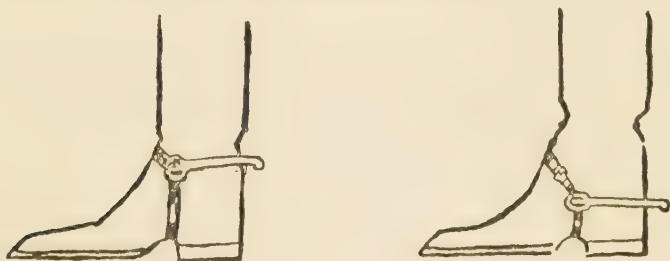


Diagram 1.

A. HOW TO WEAR A SPUR

B. HOW NOT TO WEAR A SPUR

Spurs which can be attached with one all-round strap are the best, and keep in better position, though a small stud which invariably will be found at the back of our hunting-boot will assist to keep any type of spur in place and prevent it from drooping towards the ground. The buckles of the spur-straps must be small, for large buckles are apt

to get caught in the stirrup-irons when we are riding to hounds with our feet shoved well “home” in the stirrups.

Spur straps should only be just long enough to pass through the buckles and no longer. It is not unknown for a foot to get caught in a stirrup-iron by a prolonged and totally unnecessary end to a spur-strap. Remember that the ends of the spur-straps should always point outwards.

The spurs with the loops made for one all-round strap are known as the Prince of Wales’s pattern. Made of super nickel or stainless steel, they will cost, complete with straps, approximately £1.

Hog-skin gloves are the best kind for riding. It is advisable to have a pair of string gloves tucked under your saddle-flap in case of wet weather, as they will prevent the reins slipping through your hands.

Always turn out with infinite care, and remember how conspicuous you are on top of a horse, besides it is respect to the Hunt, the Master, and your fellow-sportsmen to be well turned out.

Out hunting one must always carry a hunting-whip, or “crop,” to use the slang term by which it is usually called. This part of our hunting paraphernalia is important, and there are three essential rules regarding hunting-whips and the method of carrying them, viz. :

- I. Never carry a whip without a thong.
- II. Always carry it with the butt end down.
- III. Never have the thong looped when in the saddle. (See Diagram 2.)

Make sure when choosing a whip to select a good



Diagram 2.

The Right Way.

The Wrong Way.

A. HOW TO HOLD A HUNTING-
WHIP

B. HOW NOT TO HOLD A HUNTING-
WHIP



Diagram 2. A WORKMANLIKE WAY OF CARRYING A HUNTING-WHIP

strong one, and heavy enough for the rôle which it has to perform, i.e. opening and shutting gates ; every good hunting-whip has a formidable butt which is formed from the point of a stag's horn. One should be able to obtain a good workmanlike whalebone whip, covered in plaited kangaroo hide, from 35s. to £2, made by a reputable firm. It can have one or two silver bands, one of which should be at the junction of the stag's horn butt with the stock and the other midway up the stock. The stock should not be longer than nineteen inches, the thong approximately sixty inches, and the lash, which is a piece of red or blue silk cord (either colour being permissible), should be about ten inches long. Make sure that the keeper, i.e. the piece of leather at the top of the stock to which the thong is attached, is a solid piece, and not the old-fashioned pattern of loop-end keeper.

Thus accoutred one is prepared for the hunting-field down to the proverbial “ last gaiter button,” but no harm will be done by practising opening and shutting gates when out hacking with your whip—always remember when you approach a gate to put it into the hand on the side nearest the hinges, and when shutting the gate to be careful not to let it slam back on your horse's hind-quarters. All well-schooled hunters will be found to be handy at gates : if they are not it reflects badly on their owners, for good behaviour at gates is very simple to teach with a little patience and practice. Gate opening and shutting is a very important subject, for leaving gates open, particularly in grazing pastures, is an unpardonable offence and is bound to terminate in bad blood between the landowners

and the Hunt. If the landowner or farmer is sporting enough to allow the Hunt to ride over his pastures, it is up to all followers of the Hunt to be courteous enough to show their appreciation by showing consideration for him and his live-stock.

Consider your own feelings if you were the proud possessor of a thoroughbred colt, which, owing to the carelessness of a fox-hunter, and a man who should be the first to consider other horsemen and horse-owners, got out on to tarmac roads and injured itself owing to a gate having been left open.

Always keep well away from brood mares, cattle, and sheep, and, make a detour of their paddocks and pastures, as it is most injurious for them to get excited and gallop about, as they invariably do when hounds are in their proximity.

At gates do look back to see if others are following you, and hold the gate open until the next man is properly up to relieve you of your hold. It is the duty of the last man through a gate to shut it securely. If you are solo, see that the gate is securely latched when you shut it, and do not be satisfied just because it slams behind you. When farm labourers open gates for you, be sure and thank them, and don't clatter through splashing them with mud for their trouble.

On no account use your whip on straggling hounds, it is the rôle of the whipper-in to look after stragglers, not your business.

Out cub-hunting you may be called upon to use your whip by the Master under the following circumstances.—When hounds are drawing a cover in order to prevent the fox from breaking in a certain direction, followers are invariably detailed to range

themselves in extended order along covert side or at certain points and crack their whips to bar the fox's way ; “ saddle-tapping,” which one does by tapping the saddle-flap with the stock of your whip under your knee, is a good substitute for cracking your whip on such occasions, and will be found less fatiguing.

If your horse is a kicker, tie a piece of red ribbon round his tail as a warning : however, do not think that your responsibility ends here, and you must always avoid getting into a *mêlée* of horsemen. Remember that it is a heinous offence to kick a hound, and if hounds pass you on a road or narrow lane, turn your horse's head towards them, and keep his hind-quarters well into the fence. Here a knowledge of the leg aids and how to apply them, likewise the method of reining back, will be found invaluable.

Never ride over crops or roots, and treat sown fields like holy ground. Always ride close along the hedgerows and well up into the corners of all ground under seed.

Don't jump fences unnecessarily, and always give the man who has jumped before you time to get clear on the “ alight side ” : if you have a pilot don't jump “ in his pocket,” and always wait your turn at a gap. Never jump from zeal, and never jump a fence going to a meet or hacking home. It is unfair on your horse, and on the farmer who has to keep up his fences : smashing fences, particularly promiscuously, usually invokes the wrath of the best-tempered farmer who will retaliate by a claim for damage to the Hunt Secretary.

Always have your “ cap ” ready for the secretary,

and make it your business to find the secretary and give him your "cap," rather than to have him running you to earth.

At covert side when hounds are drawing, take an intelligent interest, keep quiet, and above all things, don't chatter.

During the run if you strike ridge and furrow terrain ride across it at the diagonal to help your horse—nearer the hedgerows the ridges will not be found so pronounced.

Always ride with extreme caution in a country which is festooned with that *bête noire* of all horsemen—barbed wire. Should you be the first to discover a place that is wired always shout out the warning "'ware wire," pronounced "war wire," likewise draw the attention of people in your wake to the presence of rabbit-holes.

Nurse your horse as much as you can throughout the day's sport, and when you get the chance dismount and slacken his girths and turn his head to the wind.¹ He may be a good old trusty hunter, who has carried some "first flighter" in his time, and will carry you game to the end if you give him half a chance, and, moreover, he will teach you more about hunting than any human can.

Remember that the horse is a noble animal, and

¹ Remember on arrival at the meet to give your horse every opportunity to "stale." Many horses will not do this when excited, so it is better to take him away to a quiet place, such as a stable or a barn. Should he not have relieved himself at the meet or at covert-side, at the first check get on the outskirts of "the field" and dismount, as a horse will invariably "stale" if he gets the chance after a short burst.

Should a horse commence to "stale" when you are in the saddle, stand up in your stirrups and lean well forward so as to take all the weight off his loins.

Always think of your horse's comfort.

that ninety per cent of horses are good horses, and we cannot say the same about their riders !! Think how often our horse can help us when we are just carriers on his generous back ; how we “ job ” his mouth to retain our seats after he has cleared a fence beautifully ; again, how we hinder him by leaning back on his loins when he takes off before an obstacle, and prevent his free action.

How often do we see a novice falling forward on to the horse’s neck on landing over a fence, and the horse throwing his head back to deposit him safely back in “ the plate.”

In this age of mechanisation there are unfortunately some people who are oblivious of the fact that a horse is but flesh and blood, and not a machine, and they seem to consider that he is merely there to be galloped unmercifully up and down hills, or even to be galloped on modern tarmac roads, should they so desire !

Therefore, never override your horse or press him ; he is as subject to fatigue as we are, and when you think he has had enough, particularly after he has carried you for a good and gruelling run, be contented to take him home. Take the shortest route back to stables and don’t dawdle. The considerate rider will dismount, and walk by his horse’s side frequently on the hack home.

Be just as careful to avoid the glassy surface of the tarmac roads with a tired hunter as you would with a fresh horse, for tired horses are apt to stumble. Should your horse cast a shoe, take him instantly to the nearest farrier.

When you reach stables, don’t dash off to your own fireside, even if the horse is a hireling, but

remain to see him in his box, and watch the preliminaries for his comfort. When he is standing hock-deep in golden straw, having been refreshed with a warm drink of gruel, and in the process of being wisped down, you may then, with a happy conscience take your leave of him, and think of yourself. You have been on good terms with him all day, so leave him as a pal, with the feeling of a great camaraderie established between you, with the knowledge that you have treated him properly and that he has responded, and with the desire to renew your acquaintance with him under the happiest possible circumstances next hunting day.

RIDER'S TURN-OUT FOR ROTTEN ROW AND HACKING GENERALLY.

Riders should always endeavour to turn out smartly for hacking, not only from the point of view that one is more conspicuous on the back of a horse, and therefore more likely to provoke criticism and ridicule should one be dressed in incongruous fashion, but also from the fact that eccentricity of dress usually denotes a poor horseman.

Riders in Rotten Row should be most punctilious about their "turn-out"; wearing clothes of a loud or unsuitable nature and not in accordance with correct attire for riding is not only wrong, but exceedingly bad form.

The name Rotten Row is a corruption of Route du Roi, the King's Road, and it was opened to horsemen by Royal prerogative, and in fact none other than the Sovereign has the right to drive down the Row.

This fact alone should induce riders to exercise

more dignity and decorum in wearing apparel, apart from the desire not to invoke ridicule on themselves and their unfortunate steeds by cutting a grotesque figure.

For Rotten Row the bowler is *de rigueur* for grown-ups. A tweed or drab “rat-catcher” coat should be worn with breeches and boots or ankle-boots and leggings. Boots worn with leggings should be higher over the ankle than ordinary walking boots, and the lacing flaps should meet properly across the instep when laced up. Three buttons of the breeches should be shown above gaiters. Riding-boots should always be laced horizontally and never “criss-crossed,” and they should be laced all the way up without any hooks, which will give an untidy appearance and bulge under the legging, which should fit closely round the ankle.

Ladies riding side-saddle should likewise turn out for Rotten Row correctly attired.

Hunting-whips are out of place in Rotten Row, but out hacking they are very useful for opening and shutting gates. The yellow-coloured “whanghee” cane is the most suitable stick for riding, and has a smart appearance ; also a short “Rattan” which is always the more workmanlike if covered in leather. A “whanghee” cane can be picked up for 1s. 6d., and will be found most serviceable. It is a mistake to pay a high price for a riding-cane, which invariably gets lost or broken by a horse treading on it.

Remember if you carry a cutting whip to carry it with the handle end uppermost.

If puttees are worn for hacking in the country,

wear them cavalry fashion, e.g. upside down with the tape ends wound round the ankles. Puttees will be much more serviceable for riding should they be finished off with leather ends and straps and buckles instead of tapes.

THE INSTITUTE OF THE HORSE.

Should readers experience any difficulty with regard to any matter appertaining to horses or kit, they are strongly advised to become members of the Institute of the Horse, for the very nominal subscription of one guinea per annum. Their Headquarters at 27 Cavendish Square, W. 1, is an amazing bureau of reliable and authentic information on all equine and equestrian subjects. This organisation, besides arranging lectures on equitation and horsemanship throughout England by well-known authorities, in order to foster and encourage riding and the love of horses, publishes *The Horse*, a quarterly journal which is of absorbing interest from cover to cover. In 1929 the Institute of the Horse inaugurated the Pony Club in order to instil into the rising generation the spirit of horsemanship, and to-day branches of the Pony Club flourish throughout England and the Empire.

CHAPTER XIII

RIDING FOR CHILDREN

RIDING for children and the age at which a child may be launched on a riding career is a subject which can be summed up for appreciation under the following two headings :

1. The child's inclination and nerve.
2. Physical development and temperament.

Undoubtedly the best results will be attained from a spontaneous desire on the part of the child to wish to learn to ride, and this inclination can be fostered by suggestions and encouragement, together with a pleasant recollection of early association with ponies.

Those children who are fortunate enough to come from a family of horsemen will have the advantage of environment and tradition ; however, it is by no means essential to come of " horsey " stock in order to become a horseman, nor is the child handicapped in any way by lack of hereditary instinct. Learning to ride and the extent of proficiency which can be attained depends entirely on the individual child in his or her desire to learn, coupled with a natural love of horseflesh.

Five is a good average age for the little boy or girl to be introduced to a pony, and from the initial

stage everything connected with this first lesson should be 100 per cent happiness. Thus the finest foundation stone will be laid for horsemanship which, if exploited on the lines of pleasure, together with due caution to prevent any kind of element of fright, will never fail to produce a nice little rider with confidence, and with a neat seat, besides giving the child a healthy recreation which, as he grows up, he can develop to later find himself master of an art which is calculated to ever stand in good stead and assist him in making a wide circle of good friends wherever he goes, for horsemanship spells camaraderie. Riding is a manly and a healthy pastime. Children who may be suffering from an inferiority-complex at school, owing to being less skilled than their companions at games are apt to become extremely unhappy, and it is surprising how the children that come under this category develop character and have their confidence restored by riding, and they invariably make exceptional progress on horseback. The knowledge that he handled his pony well or successfully negotiated some jumps will react accordingly on the child's mind and will restore his prestige with his schoolmates.

Everything, therefore, should be done to encourage the child to ride, but on no account should he be detailed to do so, and should the child not have the ready impulse to ride, or manifest any disinclination to do so, it is far better to postpone the riding lessons altogether. No advantage will be gained by forcing methods, and when the child eventually shows some inclination to ride from tactful persuasion, every endeavour should be

made to make the lessons a pleasure and not a task.

Some children are more backward than others in bodily development and are more nervously inclined, and for these children it is better to retard the first riding lessons until they have reached the age of six or seven than to force them to ride against their will, which is calculated to imbue them with a dread of horseflesh and an ingrained distaste for riding.

SELECTION OF A PONY AND ITS MANAGEMENT.

The child's pony should be carefully selected by a competent person who will bear in mind that the pony must be absolutely trustworthy, tractable, sure-footed, and possess a good mouth. The size of the child will determine him as to the size of the pony, but on no account should a pony with a broad back be chosen, as this will cause too great a strain on the child's legs, which will be stretched too widely apart—which is naturally most injurious. Therefore, the child's pony must be narrow to enable the rider to sit comfortably and without any strain.

When buying a child's pony, aim at selecting one which in conformation resembles a well-made miniature hunter with good shoulders and good withers; some ponies have low withers, which is a bad fault for carrying a saddle which will only work forward on the pony's neck unless kept in position by a crupper, which never looks well.

It should be remembered that a child rides almost entirely by balance, gripping with the knees is almost impossible as the limbs are without strength,



Diagram 1. THE WRONG SORT OF PONY FOR A CHILD

A broad-backed pony will cause undue strain on the rider with his legs stretched widely apart. The child will be in utter discomfort and is unable to sit down in his saddle or learn how to grip.

and the leg muscles are quite undeveloped, therefore the more spread the legs are the more difficulty will be experienced in keeping them in the correct position, which should be insisted on from the initial stage. That the pony should be sure-footed is important, for a stumbling animal is a source of danger.

A lot will depend on the pony's mouth as a hard-mouthed animal will only create and develop bad and unsympathetic hands, and get the juvenile rider into the habit of holding on by the reins which will be a difficult fault to eradicate, whereas a well-mouthed pony will foster the formation of light hands and flexible wrists. An old pony, provided he is free from vice, has a good mouth, and is not sluggish, is more suitable for a child than a young one.

Our native ponies, the Exmoor, Dartmoor, or New Forest breeds provide the best children's mounts, as they are usually narrow and are tractable; further, they come from hardy stock and will keep in good condition whilst out on grass; also during winter they can be kept out, provided there is a small shed in the paddock where the pony can take refuge in severe or inclement weather. In the hard winter months, however, it is advisable to give the pony 2 lbs. of corn and an armful of hay daily. This fact will dispense with the problem of the stable and stable management for those who do not possess such an appanage, but it is absolutely essential that there should be a constant water supply.

The majority of ponies go very quietly when grass-fed, but once they are brought into stables,

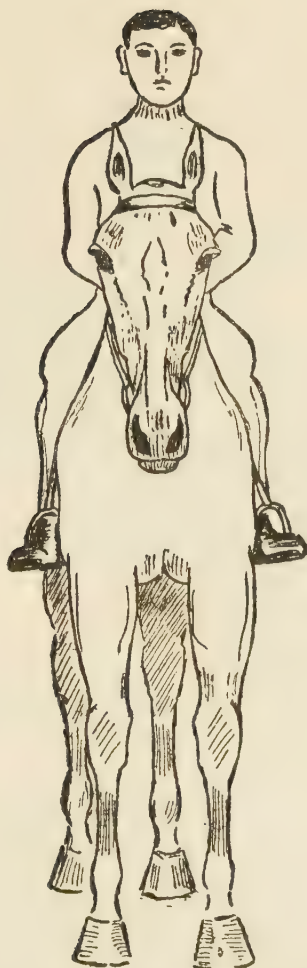


Diagram 2. THE RIGHT TYPE OF PONY

Nice and narrow, facilitating grip, and enabling the young rider to sit comfortably and without any strain.

fed on corn and are clipped out, they are apt to become too much of a handful for a small child ; in fact the well-corned-up pony which is liable to take hold on the least provocation is a positive danger ; further, he will no doubt develop all sorts of bad habits, such as bucking and shying.

When the pony is out on grass his coat should not be clipped.

There is a tremendous advantage to be gained by letting the child look after his pony from the first (of course under supervision), as this will accustom him to dealing with the animal he rides by looking after its needs. All children should be taught how to look after their ponies, how to groom them and how to put on their saddle and bridle, and also how to clean their own “ tack.” Apart from being useful this will make them independent and will create a greater bond of friendship between them and their mounts.

SADDLES AND BRIDLES.

In selecting a saddle for the youngster there are two salient features which must be borne in mind, viz. that the saddle should fit the pony and also fit the rider. It is a fatal mistake to think that any saddle will do so long as it can be kept in position by girths. The saddle should fit in close to the pony's sides, and avoid saddles with heavily-stuffed panels which push the rider away from his mount—the closer the rider can fit in to the pony the better. The saddle should be nice and roomy to enable the rider to sit well down in it ; not infrequently one sees children riding in too small saddles, sitting in utter discomfort perched right



Reproduced by courtesy of British School of Equitation, Thames Ditton

A NINE-YEAR-OLD PUPIL CLEARING THE TRIPLE BAR IN CAPITAL STYLE

The rider is sitting very well and "going with" her pony.

upon the cantle with their knees protruding beyond the saddle-flaps.

A good make of second-hand saddle is far and away better for a child than a brand new saddle, for the former will be soft and will have less of the slippery surface typical of a new saddle, besides a new saddle being hard will be liable to chafe the young rider.

Always remember that the child may grow out of the saddle that only just fits at the time of purchase. For very small children sheep-skin saddles can be recommended as they are comfortable and will prevent chafing.

Particular attention should be paid to the stirrup-irons, which should fit properly, being neither too narrow, so as to cause the foot to be jammed, nor too roomy in case the stirrup-iron might slip right over the child's heel.

The best bridle for a child is undoubtedly a plain snaffle with a single reins, a double reins being too much for small hands to manipulate. The reins should always be kept soft and supple with saddle soap, as stiff hard reins will cause blistered hands; likewise all the leather work of the saddle must be kept soft, particularly the seat and saddle-flaps, which should never be polished. Soft and comfortable saddles facilitate grip, which should always be encouraged from the initial stage.

The last item in the saddlery for the child is a neck-strap, which should be always worn whether the pony is being ridden in a martingale or not. A neck-strap is advocated as it will prevent the child hanging on by the reins, and the fact of it being there will help to inspire confidence. Further,

it is preferable, should the child want to “cling on,” that he should do so by an accommodating neck-strap rather than by the reins, or by holding the front arch of the saddle which will cause the child to be “behind the pony,” i.e. too far back in the saddle, whereas the tendency of the neck-strap method is to get the child to lean more forward, and be “with” the animal.

RIDING LESSONS.

Riding lessons should be given by a competent instructor from the initial stage, who should take the child alone in an enclosed school or small paddock. It is advisable that the parents should not be present, as they will only have a disturbing influence on the child, and will distract the attention of the pupil, which should be at the instructor's disposal.

A careful instructor should be selected who is highly competent, and is possessed of inexhaustible patience.

Over-caution is the rule for teaching children and the element of any possible chance of fright or danger should be eliminated to a degree. A bad fall or a fright may have a very disturbing effect on a child's mind and have the disastrous consequence of creating a distaste for horse-flesh and riding.

The first lesson should be given on a leading rein, the instructor leading the pony on foot. Throughout this lesson the child should be taught to sit evenly in the saddle, with the inside of the knees lightly pressing against the saddle. The feet should rest naturally in the stirrup-irons with the heels down.

The toes must not be turned in too much as they will cause the feet to be turned over at the ankles. The reins should be held in both hands; on no account should holding the reins in the left hand only be permitted, as this causes the left shoulder to be in advance of the right. When the child has got some confidence and is sitting up fairly well the instructor should be mounted on a quiet pony and take the child on the leading rein. The progress and the advancement of the instruction will depend entirely on the child and on his temperament, and accordingly the time for dispensing with the leading rein will depend entirely on the child.

However, when it is allowed to ride free of the lead it should do so in the school or in an enclosed space.

Great care should be taken in these early and very important lessons that the hands should be in the right position, being kept low and with the wrist rounded. Every tendency to a faulty method or attitude must be instantly checked, else the child may develop a bad habit which once implanted will be difficult to eradicate.

Riding without stirrups is too drastic an exercise for small children, and although it is an excellent method of strengthening the seat, developing riding muscle and teaching grip with bigger children and adults—when practised judiciously—yet it is too severe a strain on the small child's undeveloped limbs and is, therefore, not advocated. A child's legs are too weak to grip and consequently children balance themselves almost entirely by their feet in the stirrup-irons, in contrast to the adult who should

balance himself from his knee and thigh grip, using the stirrups as a means for strengthening the seat and for comfort.

The duration of the first lesson should be limited to half an hour, and gradually the lessons may be lengthened to a full hour. The child should not be allowed to get over-fatigued or bored and the whole idea of riding should be fostered in the child's mind as that of a great treat, and, therefore, maintain the novelty. As the child makes progress its interest will be likewise increasing, which should be the instructor's aim and object, for there is no child born who with a genuine love of animals, together with the desire to learn, provided he has not suffered a severe fright either from a bad toss or the fact of his mount having once got away with him, has not developed into a good rider.

From the first, therefore, cultivate confidence, and the child should be allowed to talk to his mount, but on no account allow any “chucking” noises with the mouth. The elementary aids should be taught and the child should learn how the hands and legs work in conjunction with each other. If the child is naturally plucky and has a fairly firm seat at the trot and canter, and is able to control his mount, jumping over a very small obstacle may be introduced in the school. The instructor will know when to use his discretion as to this lesson, but on no account should the child be forced to jump, and the best method to adopt is rather to let the initiative for jumping come from the child rather than from the instructor.

CHILDREN'S TURN-OUT FOR HACKING AND HUNTING.

Children's kit for riding should be workmanlike and neat, and great care should be taken to avoid any kind of garment which is incongruous or conspicuous.

Eccentricity of kit on horseback is bad form with grown-ups, and always betokens the novice, therefore from the commencement of their riding career, children should be dressed with a view to fostering decorum, so that when the time comes for them to choose their own hacking or "rat-catcher" garb they will know exactly what is good style and what to avoid.

Another feature to remember with children's riding apparel besides choosing suitable and durable material, is that they are apt to grow out of their clothes long before they are worn out.

First and foremost Jodhpores are excellent garments for small children, and dispense with that difficult problem of getting breeches and gaiters to fit correctly. Jodhpores should be cut by an expert and should fit well above and below the knees to prevent rucking; a leather strap which passes round the leg just below the knee will assist to keep them more secure; the best material being whipcord or Bedford cord, dark fawn or brown being the most suitable colours as they look workmanlike and are less liable to show stains. An exercise or "Newmarket" jersey is advisable in the winter months, being warm and neat, and avoids the intricacies involved by a collar and tie.

Boots are always preferable to shoes for riding, besides they protect the ankles when it rains.

Older children should be dressed with much greater care, and particularly when they go out hunting they should conform as strictly as possible to the correct “rat-catcher” kit, and be a credit to themselves and their ponies.

When a boy or a girl is about to be introduced to the hunting-field, the wardrobe is an all-important subject, and the following turn-out for a boy aged fourteen would pass muster—Bowler hat (this is essential, and besides being absolutely correct will protect the head in case of a “toss” and frequently has prevented concussion), a tweed or dark fawn coat cut for riding, slightly skirted, and with a vent at the back, cord breeches and well-fitting box-cloth buttoned gaiters with black boots.

Ankle boots for riding should always be cut higher than the ordinary boot in order to fit closely above the ankle, and to prevent the gaiters getting rucked over them, which at once gives a most untidy appearance; they should be laced all the way up with eyelet-holes; on no account should the lacing be finished off at the top with the usual hooks. The lacing of riding-boots should always be horizontal and never “criss-crossed.” A hunting-whip should be carried and always should it be complete with a thong and lash. Leather gloves are the best for riding, string gloves being tucked under the saddle-flap in case it should rain. On no account should children be allowed to wear spurs, which besides being dangerous also look grotesque on juveniles, and are entirely unnecessary.

Well-cut Jodhpores can always take the place of breeches and gaiters. The same dress equally applies for a girl who rides astride. A soft collar

and tie completes this very suitable and workmanlike turn-out.

THE PONY CLUB.

The writer cannot too strongly advocate enrolment with the local branch of the Pony Club, and



Diagram 3.

A SMART WORKMANLIKE TURN-OUT FOR THE HUNTING FIELD

every young rider should become a member of this splendid institution, which has already done such yeoman service in raising the standard of riding

throughout the country by encouraging and fostering equitation and the care of horse-flesh with the younger generation.

Branches of the Pony Club are affiliated to Hunts, and practically every pack of fox-hounds in England boasts a branch of the Pony Club (the Pony Club districts corresponding, as far as possible, with the respective hunting countries). Through the medium of mounted gymkhanas, at rallies, when the various branches have their meetings for instruction in riding and in hunting-field etiquette, and special hunt fixtures for its members, the Pony Club is infusing the spirit of horsemanship in the young and guaranteeing the future of fox-hunting.

APPENDIX A

GLOSSARY OF TERMS USED IN STABLE MANAGEMENT AND IN EQUITATION

1. **THE AIDS.** The aids are signals by means of which the rider indicates his intentions to the horse. These signals are given through the medium of the hands which direct and control the horse's forehand with the reins, and the legs which, when applied behind the girth, control and collect the horse's hind-quarters. The aids are used simultaneously and in harmony with one another, whilst the rider's body, by leaning backwards or forwards, or to either side, assists to emphasise these indications.

The voice is the fourth aid and may be used in conjunction, and will assist in steadying a frightened horse if used in a soothing tone. Whips, martingales, nose-bands, and spurs are known as the artificial aids.

2. **BALANCE.** A horse is said to be "balanced" when he carries his own weight and the weight of his rider in such a way that he can use himself to the best advantage in any circumstances.
3. **BEHIND THE BRIDLE.** This term means that the horse is not going up in his bridle, but is hanging back. A fault to be found with sluggish horses. Horses get into this habit of being "behind the bridle" from being ridden by slovenly riders who do not endeavour, or know how, to ride a horse in a collected manner by the correct application of the aids.
4. **BISHOPING.** Tampering with the incisor teeth in order to falsify or camouflage a horse's actual age. This trick can be easily detected by the absence of enamel which has been removed by the file in the process.

5. **BODY BRUSH** (see Diagram). For removing scurf from the horse's coat.



Diagram 5. **BODY BRUSH**

6. **BORING**. When a horse leans the weight of his head and neck constantly on the bit it is called “boring.”
7. **BREAST-PLATE, A**. An article of saddlery which goes round the horse's neck, and is secured to the girths between his forelegs, and is also attached to the “D's” in the front arch of the saddle. Its object is to prevent the saddle from slipping back, and it is used with horses which run up light like greyhounds, or are “herring-gutted.”
8. **BROKEN WIND**. An affection of the lungs. Broken-winded horses have considerable difficulty in expiration. Broken wind can be detected by watching the flanks, particularly after the animal has moved at a fast pace.
9. **BRUSHING** (see Diagram). A term used to describe a faulty action when the horse strikes either fore- or



Diagram 9. **ADJUSTING A YORKSHIRE BOOT**

hind-leg with the adjoining one, when in motion, on the inside of the fetlock joints. Brushing is usually

due to faulty action, fatigue, want of condition, or bad shoeing, e.g. a shoe projecting and nails not properly clinched. Consistent brushing will cause a permanent enlargement on the inside of the fetlock joint.

Brushing boots should be worn on the least indication of this bad habit. The simplest form of brushing boot is that known as the Yorkshire boot. This device is best made out of a piece of Kersey horse clothing, which should be cut to the size of 12 inches by 9 inches. This piece of cloth should be applied round the fetlock with the junction at the front, and a piece of tape should be tied round the centre just above the fetlock joint. When the tape is tied, the top portion of the cloth should be turned down so that it will form a double fold round the fetlock.

10. **BURNISHER, A.** A saddle-room requisite for cleaning bits and stirrup-irons and all steel devices. It consists of a closely interlaced square of chain on a chamois leather.
11. **CALF-LEGS** (see Diagram 4, Chapter I). A horse whose legs are too short in proportion to his body is described as having calf-legs, and having calf-knees when viewed from the side the line down the front of the knee is inclined to concavity.
12. **CALKINS** (see Diagram). Projections turned down at the extremity of a horseshoe for the purpose of lifting the heels off the ground or for giving foothold to draught horses.



Diagram 12. SHOE OF A DRAUGHT HORSE WITH CALKINS

13. **CANTERING DISUNITED** (see Diagram 4, Chapter VI). When a horse canters or gallops disunited, it means that his leading hind-leg is on the side opposite to the leading foreleg. See definition of terms cantering or galloping "true."
14. **CANTERING FALSE.** A horse is said to be cantering or galloping "false" when, at either of these paces, he

moves in a circle to the right with the near fore- and near hind-leg leading, or to the left with the off fore and off hind leading.

15. **CANTERING TRUE** (see Diagram 3, Chapter VI). When a horse is cantering or galloping “true,” the legs should move in such a manner that whichever foreleg leads, the hind-leg on the same side must also lead.
16. **CAVESSON, A.** A head-piece used in horse training which has a weighted nose-band with three rings to either of which the longeing-rein can be attached.
17. **COLLECTED.** A horse is said to be “collected” when he is being ridden well up in his bit with his head flexed, his jaw relaxed, and his hocks well under him, ensuring that he has full control over his limbs and ready to respond to the signals or aids of his rider.
18. **COW-HOCKS** (see Diagram 7, Chapter I). A horse whose hocks are turned inwards at the points like a cow is said to have cow-hocks.
19. **CRADLE, A** (see Diagram). A stable appliance which is strapped round a horse's neck to prevent him biting at a bandage, or licking a sore.

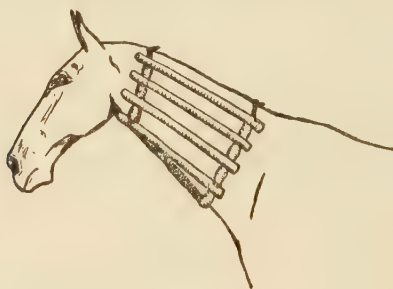


Diagram 19. A CRADLE

20. **CRUPPER, A.** A leather loop which is passed under the tail and attached to a “D” in the cantle of the saddle to keep it in position and from slipping forward. It is rarely used except with extremely narrow-shouldered or low-withered horses and mules.
21. **CURRY-COMB** (see Diagram). An implement used in grooming which has a series of toothed metal edges parallel to each other. It is not applied to the

horse's coat; its purpose is solely to remove the scurf from the body brush. The Army curry-comb

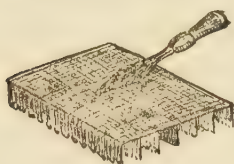


Diagram 21. CURRY-COMB

with the webbing back is preferable to the civilian pattern with a handle, as it enables the groom to lean the back of his hand against the horse if necessary.

22. **DANDY BRUSH, A** (see Diagram). A stiff brush of fibre for removing dry mud from the horse's legs, or for

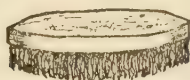


Diagram 22. DANDY BRUSH

brushing out the horse's mane or tail. It is too hard to use as a body brush except on a thick-coated horse just up from grass.

23. **DISHING.** A fault in the horse's action in that he throws one or both of the forelegs from the knee outwards as he raises them off the ground when trotting.
24. **DOCKED.** The term for a tail cut short; it means the actual amputation of the tail bone. It is an objectionable form of mutilation which is now practically an obsolete custom. Once a horse's tail is docked his purchase value depreciates by at least 25 per cent.
25. **WE-NECK** (see Diagram 2, Chapter I). A horse is said to be ewe-necked when his neck at the crest (i.e. between poll and withers) is concave instead of convex.
26. **FEATHER.** The abundant growth of hair to be found on the fetlocks of Clydesdale and Shire horses.
27. **FIDDLE-HEADED.** A term to describe a horse with an ugly-shaped head.
28. **FLEXIONS, THE** (see Diagrams 5 and 6, Chapter VI). A term connected with the horse's head carriage in conjunction with neck movement from the poll. There are direct and lateral flexions.

29. **FOREHAND, THE.** All the parts of a horse before the saddle, i.e. the head, neck, shoulders, withers, and forelegs.
30. **FORELOCK, THE.** The part of the mane which hangs down over the forehead between the ears of a horse which has not been hogged.
31. **FORGING.** A noise made by the striking of the hind-shoe against the fore as the horse is trotting. Horses "forge" when young and green, when out of condition, or fatigued, and when they are ridden in a slovenly manner. This noise is also called "clicking."
32. **FROG** (see Diagram 2, Chapter IX). The frog is a triangular-shaped formation in the sole of a horse's hoof. The frog has an elastic action and expands laterally when pressed upon.
33. **GALVAYNE GROOVE** (see Diagram). A brownish-coloured groove on the corner incisor teeth which

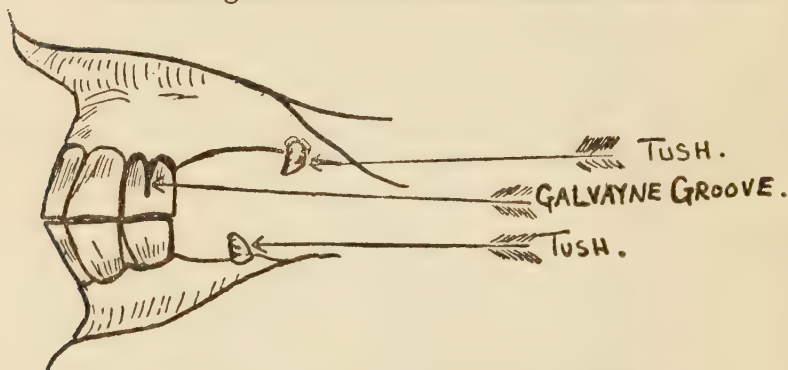


Diagram 33. THE GALVAYNE GROOVE AND TUSHES

appears when the horse is ten years old, and can be used to denote approximately his age between ten and twenty.

34. **GOOSE-RUMPED.** When a horse's hind-quarters slant down from the croup to the dock in a very pronounced manner, he is said to be goose-rumped.
35. **HAND, A.** A term used in measuring a horse. A hand represents 4 inches. A horse's height is taken from the highest point of the withers to the ground. A horse standing 15 hands 3 inches would be therefore 63 inches high.

36. **HAUTE ÉCOLE.** A term used to describe horsemanship exploited in most scientific methods for show ring and show jumping. Studied greatly in Continental riding-schools. The Spanish School in Vienna were the greatest exponents of *haute école* in modern times.
37. **HEAD-STALL OR HEAD-COLLAR** (see Diagram). A stable requisite with which the horse is racked up in the stall or loose-box.



Diagram 37. HEAD-STALL

38. **HERRING-GUTTED.** A term used to describe a horse which runs up light like a greyhound and is deficient of sufficient room for heart and lungs. It is an indication of inability to stay.
39. **"HOBDAyed."** A horse is said to be "Hobdayed" when he has had the Hobday operation performed on his larynx as a cure for "roaring." This operation was made popular by Professor Sir Frederick Hobday, C.M.G., F.R.C.V.S., Principal and Dean of the Royal Veterinary College, London.
40. **HOOF-PICK** (see Diagram). An implement for picking dirt out of the horse's hooves or for removing any stone which has become lodged between the frog and the shoe. The point of the pick should be blunt. As a hoof-pick invariably gets lost in straw bedding, it is advisable to tie a piece of red cord to the handle to facilitate it being found.



Diagram 40. HOOF-PICK

41. **HORSE LENGTH.** A term of measurement equivalent to eight feet. This represents the length of ground a horse stands over.

42. “INDEPENDENT SEAT.” The definition of a seat which has reached that degree of firmness from balance and grip which ensures that the rider is entirely independent of the reins or stirrups.
43. INDIRECT REIN (see Diagrams, Chapter V). A term for neck-reining; e.g. when the off rein is carried over the horse's neck to the near side and is pressed against it without any tightening of the near rein, the horse if properly trained will turn to the left. The indirect rein is always employed when all the reins are in one hand, particularly at polo. The direct rein is the term for tension on the side of the horse's mouth, with the rein on the side to which it is intended to turn.
44. LANE, A. A long, narrow, fenced-in enclosure used in teaching the horse to jump. Various kinds of obstacles are placed at equal distances apart. The lane ensures that the horse cannot run out at his fences. The jumps are raised gradually during this progressive system of teaching horse and rider the correct way of jumping.
- The lane method is greatly exploited in the Army.
45. LONGEING. A term used in the initial stage in training the horse. Longeing means to lead or ring the horse by means of a long longeing-rein attached to the Cavesson.
46. MANÈGE. Another term for a riding-school, which is usually understood to be a fenced-in enclosure of riding-school dimensions for the purpose of teaching equitation.
47. MARTINGALE (see Diagrams, Chapter X). Standing martingale.—An appliance which is used as a check to prevent the horse from throwing up his head too high—it gives the rider more control over his horse. It is attached from the nose-band and passing between the horse's forelegs is fastened to the girth. It is kept in position by a neck-strap.

Running martingale.—This pattern martingale is attached to the reins by means of rings which the reins pass through—it is then similarly adjusted as a standing martingale to the girth. Its object is to keep a horse's head in the right position, and keep him straight and steady when riding at a fence. If

used with a double-bridle the running martingale should be attached to the bit or curb-rein.

Irish martingale.—Two rings connected together by 4 inches of leather through which the reins pass.

48. "NAGGING." The process of training or schooling a horse for riding and hunting, and teaching him manners and behaviour with hounds. A "nagsman" is the term for a horseman skilled in riding young horses and horses with vice and bad habits.
49. "NAPPY." Horses which "refuse" from temper and are difficult to ride are generally called "nappy" horses.
50. NEAR SIDE. The left side of a horse is called the near side, and the right side is called the off side.
51. "NIGGLE." A short-stepping action which is very tiresome for the rider.
52. NUMNAH. A felt pad shaped like a saddle which is used between the saddle and the horse's back in order to prevent pressure or friction from the hardness of the saddle.
53. OVER-BENT. When a horse's action is such that he moves in an exaggerated collected manner with his head too bent at the poll, he is described as being over-bent.
54. OVERREACH (see Diagram 2, Chapter IX). Striking the inside of the heel of the foreleg with the inner rim of the toe of the hind-shoe; it is rarely caused by the toe of the hind-shoe. Overreaching may cause a severe wound or bruise.

It is caused by galloping suddenly into heavy "going," or by pulling up suddenly.

A horse which is liable to overreach should wear an india-rubber overreach boot which fits round the pastern joint, and care should be taken to "bevel off" the inner rims of the hind shoes.
55. PASSAGE, THE. A lateral movement by which the horse moves to a flank, keeping his neck and body parallel with the object he is moving away from or towards.
56. POINTING. When a horse rests a forefoot it is known as pointing. It is an indication of lameness or navicular trouble.

57. **PORT** (see Diagram 4, Chapter X). The curved portion on the mouthpiece of a bit.
58. “**RISING**” AND “**OFF**.” Terms used in connection with the age of a horse. A horse nearly four years old would be said to be “rising four,” whereas if just over four years it is said to be “four off.”
59. **ROACH-BACKED**. A horse with a prominent spinal column is said to have a roach-back. A roach-back is the converse of a hollow back.
60. **ROARER, A.** A horse which makes a noise when breathing quickly as in galloping. It is an affection of the larynx. A lesser degree of “roaring” is known as “whistling.”
61. **ROLLER**. A broad girth of webbing which goes right round the horse’s body to keep the rugs in position in the stable.
62. “**ROUGHED UP**.” A term for describing the gradual stages in the change of conditions through which a hunter passes when the hunting season is over and before he is put out on grass. This preparation usually lasts from two to three weeks.
63. **SHORT-COUPLED**. A horse is said to be short-coupled when he is short in the middle piece.
64. **SICKLE-HOCKS** (see Diagram 5, Chapter I). Hocks which are shaped like a sickle, i.e. bent at too much of an angle like a greyhound’s. Hocks of this description can never be properly under the horse, and are a sign of weakness.
65. **SKIP, A.** A wicker basket for collecting the “drop-pings” in a stable.
66. **SOLD WITH A WARRANTY**. Horses sold at Messrs. Tattersall’s as good hunters, “must be sound in wind and eyes, quiet to ride, have been hunted, and be capable of being hunted.” Good hacks must be sound in wind and eyes, quiet to ride, and *not* lame. These are called warranties.
67. **STAR-GAZER** (see Diagram, Ewe-neck, Chapter I). A term for a horse which has the habit of holding his head in an awkward position; it is a common fault with ewe-necked horses. A standing martingale is the most effective method of checking this bad habit.

68. **STRAPPER.** Another term for a groom ; strapping is stable parlance for grooming.
69. **STRING HALT.** This is a complaint which causes the horse to lift one or both hind-legs abnormally high when moving. It is incurable and gets worse with age. String halt is an unsoundness and may give rise to lameness.
70. **SURCINGLE.** An all-round girth which goes right round the horse's body, passing over the saddle. It keeps the saddle firmer in position when used, and prevents any movement of the saddle-flaps.
71. **"TACK."** A stable word for saddlery. "Tack" is an abbreviation for the word tackle, meaning harness.
72. **TIED IN BELOW THE KNEE.** A fault in conformation when the measurement immediately below the knee is smaller than lower down the cannon-bone.
73. **TUBED.** A horse said to be "tubed" is one with an artificial tube let into his windpipe. The operation is termed tracheotomy.
74. **TUSHES** (see Diagram, Galvayne groove). Small pointed teeth which are to be found in the gums a short distance behind the corner incisors and in front of the back or molar teeth. Only horses are provided with tushes, these teeth being absent in mares : there are, however, exceptional cases where they are found in a rudimentary stage in a mare's mouth, but such an occurrence is very rare. As a horse ages the tushes become blunter gradually. Tushes make their first appearance when the horse is between four and five years old.
75. **TWITCH, A.** A stable appliance used in giving medicine, or when clipping restive horses ; it is adjusted to the upper lip by means of a loop of rope which passes through the end of a stick and which is kept secure by twisting like a tourniquet.
76. **UNNERVED.** A term for describing a horse's foot which has had the nerves removed in order to ameliorate navicular disease. A horse which has been unnerved is unsound.
77. **WELL-RIBBED UP.** An expression for describing a horse's conformation when he has well-rounded or well-hooped ribs with a minimum of space between the last rib and hip.

78. WHISTLER, A. See definition 60 for "a Roarer."

79. WIND-SUCKING AND CRIB-BITING. A term for a stable vice. A horse subject to "wind-sucking" draws in air and swallows it. It is simple to detect as the horse can be watched going through the motions of this bad habit in arching his neck and gulping.

Crib-biting is an aggravated form of wind-sucking. With this vice the animal goes through the same motions of wind-sucking, but catches hold of the manger or half-door of his box in order to do so. When swallowing the air the horse emits a "grunt." Once a horse has started to crib-bite he will always endeavour to do so, but much can be done to prevent him by removing the manger and all wooden devices which he can grasp in his teeth, and by feeding him off the ground level.

80. WINGS. Hurdles interlaced with furze or wattles which are placed on the flanks of artificial jumps to keep the horse from running out.

81. "WISP," A. An essential adjunct for grooming. A wisp is made of a rope of hay or straw. Commencing with the figure of eight, it is interlaced in such a manner as to form a pad. Wising is really a form of massage. It is a most valuable method of improving the condition of the skin and coat and for making muscle. It stimulates the skin and improves circulation.

82. "YAWING." When a horse reaches out and down with his mouth it is called "yawing."

A horse which yaws and bores at his bridle should be ridden in a Cavesson nose-band.

APPENDIX B

COLOURS, MARKINGS, SEX, AND AGE

COLOURS.

The following are the recognised colours for horses, some of which need no description, such as the bay, brown, and black, but it should be mentioned that the latter colour is usually described as brown.

The colour of a foal's muzzle determines his colour, as although his coat will change colour according to the time of year, his muzzle remains the same colour, e.g. :

Black horses with a brown muzzle are always called brown. Chestnuts vary in colour from a dark liver or walnut colour to a light washy colour.

The dun is best described as having a fawn or khaki-coloured coat.

With roans there are two varieties in the "strawberry" or "red" (the latter sometimes described as "sorrel"), and the "blue" roan.

Greys are rarely defined other than being grey and dappled grey, although a dark grey is sometimes alluded to as steel-grey. A "skewbald" is a horse whose colouring is a mixture of either chestnut or bay and white patches, and the "piebald" is black and white only.

MARKINGS.

Black Points. A bay horse with black legs from the knees and hocks downwards is said to have black points.

A Blaze. A broad white splash which extends down a horse's face from the forehead to the muzzle.

A Race. A narrow white stripe which extends down the face.

A Snip. A white mark between the nostrils.

A Star. A white patch in the centre of the forehead.

A Sock. When white hair covers the fetlock it is known as a sock.

A Stocking. When the white hair extends further up the leg closer to the knee or hock, it is called a stocking.

SEX.

The word "horse" is used to describe the equine race; however, it is necessary to define the sex for accurate description.

A gelding is a male of any age which has been unsexed.

A colt is the term for a young unbroken male, and when used in reference to racing it means a young entire or stallion of not more than three years old.

A filly is a female up to three years of age, and after three years she is called a "mare."

In breeding the father is called the sire, and the mother the dam.

Pedigrees are always given in the description of blood stock; the name of the horse comes first, followed by the sire and the dam, viz. April the Fifth, by Craig an Eran out of Sold Again. Usually a dash is substituted for the words "out of," viz. Slave Dream, by Captivation—La Rève.

In the case of thoroughbred and half-breed horses which are being sold as hunters, full particulars will be advertised as follows:—Rath Robbin, a chestnut gelding, 6 years, 16 hands 1 in., by Knockrath; dam's pedigree unknown. A good hunter and jumper, up to 14 stone: hunted to date with the Ormond Hounds.

AGE.

A horse's age can be ascertained from his teeth. He has two complete sets of incisor teeth in his life, the first set being the foal or milk teeth, and these are followed by the permanent teeth.

An animal has gained all his permanent teeth at four and a half years, which consist of six upper and six lower nippers or incisor teeth, and if he is a horse the tushes will have made their appearance on either side of each jaw. Tushes do not appear in a mare's mouth, and at first they are small and sharp, but become gradually blunted with age.

A horse has twenty-four molar or grinders, or, back teeth. A fully grown horse has, therefore, forty teeth in all, compared with the mare who has thirty-six.

The rôle of the front or incisor teeth is to bite or nip the grass, or forage, and pass it back to the molar or grinders for mastication. The nippers, therefore, bite and the grinders chew with a grinding motion.

The age of a thoroughbred horse is always reckoned from January 1st, in spite of being foaled usually in April or May, and all other horses' ages are calculated from May 1st.

A mule is a hybrid which is the progeny of a male ass and a mare ; a jennet is the result of a cross between a male horse and a female ass.

APPENDIX C

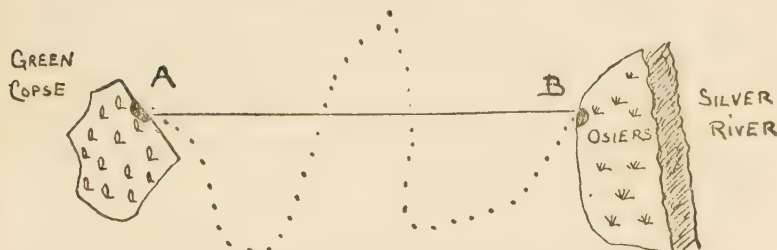
GLOSSARY OF HUNTING TERMS

1. **ANTLERS.** The stag's horns. A stag is said to have his rights when his antlers show the complete number of points; counting up from the skull the first point is called the brow, the second the bay, the third the tray; the next points are those which appear in a cluster "atop" of the beam and which must number three on each side to classify what is known in stag-hunting as a twelve-pointer.
2. **BABBLER.** A noisy hound which is given to babbling, or flinging his tongue without a cause.
3. **BLANK.** To draw a covert blank is to find no quarry in the covert.
4. **BOLT, To.** Forcing a fox to vacate an earth or drain by putting a terrier in.
5. **BRUSH.** The tail of a fox.
6. **BULLFINCH.** A very high thorn hedge which has not been interfered with from its natural growth. It is a particularly formidable obstacle and it has a ditch on one or both sides. The name bullfinch may be a corruption of "bull fence," a fence to keep cattle in their pastures in grazing countries.
7. **CALF.** The young of the red deer.
8. **CAP, THE.** The subscription for the day's hunting is called "the cap." Regular subscribers to the Hunt are not capped except under such circumstances as the collection for Earl Haig's Fund, or for the Hunt Servants' Benefit Society. The "cap" is collected by the Hunt Secretary on the way from the meet to the first draw.
9. **CAST, A.** To recover the line when hounds have lost or overrun the line of the fox without lifting or getting their heads up. The word cast can also be used as a verb, to cast.

10. **CHECK.** A sudden halt in a run owing to the loss of the scent.
11. **CHOPPED.** A fox killed before he has had time to break cover is said to have been chopped.
12. **COUPLE, A.** Hounds are always counted in couples ; a pack consisting of 29 hounds would, therefore, be alluded to as $14\frac{1}{2}$ couples.
13. **CUB.** The young of the fox.
14. **CUB-HUNTING.** Cub-hunting commences after the harvest, approximately during the third week in August, and it lasts until about the first week in November. The object of cub-hunting is to break up fox litters and teach both foxes and hounds, particularly the "young entry," their business. Cub-hunting provides followers with the best opportunity to learn the scientific side of hunting and hound work before fox-hunting commences. "Cubbing" is the slang term for cub-hunting.
15. **CUT AND LAID.** A fence of thorn bushes which have been cut half-way through near the roots with a bill-hook or slasher and bent back along the top of the fence. A cut and laid invariably runs along the top of a low bank.
16. **DOE.** The female of the fallow deer.
17. **DOUBLE.** A fox is said to double when it turns short back on its own line.
18. **DOUBLE BANK.** A natural bank with a ditch on the "take-off" and "alight" sides. It is not a fly-fence and a horse must change his legs at the top of the bank which is usually some three feet in breadth. A double bank is an obstacle which is typical of Irish terrain. In England it is known as an Irish bank. It is a very popular obstacle in Continental horse shows and race-courses, where it is known as the "Banquette Irlandaise."
19. **DRAW.** An artificial scent produced by trailing an odorous substance, such as a bag soaked in aniseed, along a line of country which has been selected for the day's run. A drag-hunt is the name for a pack of hounds which hunt a drag.
20. **DRAW, THE.** When hounds are taken off by the Huntsman to the covert to rouse a fox, it is said to be "the draw."

21. **EARTH.** The term used for the hole or burrow the foxes use and breed in.
22. **EARTH-STOPPER.** The man whose duty it is to block up the earths in those coverts which may be drawn the following day. He performs his task overnight when foxes are abroad foraging.
23. **FEATHERING ON THE SCENT.** The term that describes the action of a hound's stern when he believes he scents his game but is not quite certain enough to give tongue.
24. **HARBOURER.** The man whose duty it is to mark down a warrantable stag for hunting, and to inform the Huntsman as to the covert where the stag is harboured or lodged. He is a highly skilled man in the science of woodcraft and venery, being able to estimate the age of the quarry by the size of the foot- or slot-marks.
25. **HEADED.** A fox when turned or made to divert from its line by pedestrians, farm labourers, or motors, is said to be headed.
26. **HIND.** The female of the red deer.
27. **HITTING THE LINE OFF.** When the Huntsman recovers the line of the hunted fox after making a “ cast ” or “ casts.”
28. **LIFT, To.** To lift hounds is to take them to a “ holloa ” or to some point where the Huntsman has been told the fox has been seen or to a place where he expects to pick up a lost line.
29. **MARKING TO GROUND.** When a fox has been run into an earth or drain the hounds stand baying and scratching at the entrance.
30. **MASK.** The head of a fox.
31. **OXER.** A very formidable fence characteristic of the shires and grazing countries. It consists of a high hedge with a post and rails on one or both sides which stand out far enough from the fence to catch a horse's legs. To negotiate this type of fence successfully demands a bold jumper who must spread himself sufficiently. The oxe fence has derived its name from having been designed to keep cattle in their pastures.
32. **PAD.** The foot of the fox.

33. **POACHED.** Ground is said to be poached when immediately before a jump it has become pitted with the marks of horses' hooves. A "poached take off" should be avoided as it is apt to be too severe a strain on the horses' loins or ligaments. Besides, a poached "take off" will check the momentum of a horse when jumping.
34. **POINT, A (Diagram).** A point is a term used to describe the distance as the crow flies across the country that a fox has travelled during a hunt. To say that "the Pytchley made a point of five miles" might mean that hounds covered twelve miles in all from the spot where the fox was found to where he was killed or marked to ground.



Fox found at A in green copse covert and killed at B in osier bed, which as the crow flies or measured on the map is five miles. However, the fox travelled as shown by the dotted line, which is approximately twelve miles. The hunt, however, made a five-mile point.

35. **RATE, To.** An expression used to describe the reprimanding of hounds sometimes by the Huntsman, but more often by the "whips," for a breach of discipline.
36. **RUNNING MUTE.** Hounds running without a cry, i.e. not throwing their tongues.
37. **RUNNING RIOT.** When hounds hunt any scent other than that of the fox they are said to be running riot.
38. **SLOT.** The foot of a deer. To slot (verb) is to track the deer by his footmarks.
39. **STAFF, THE HUNT.** There is a Master (M.F.H.) to a pack of foxhounds who may or may not hunt hounds himself; if he does not hunt hounds he employs a professional huntsman. The Master if not hunting hounds acts as Field-Master; the rôle

of Field-Master is of a disciplinary nature in the hunting-field. Every Hunt has a Secretary or Hon. Secretary, whose duty it is to keep the accounts of the Hunt, settle compensation claims for damage caused by the Hunt and by foxes, and collect the “cap” on hunting days. The rest of the staff consists of the Huntsman, who in some cases is the Master and in most cases where the Master hunts hounds himself he has a 1st Whip who also fulfils the rôle of Kennel Huntsman. The Staff of a Hunt will be found to vary according to its size with each individual Hunt, and some packs employ a 1st Whipper-in and a 2nd Whipper-in.

In many cases the rôles of Kennel Huntsman and 1st Whip are combined.

40. **STAKE AND BOUND.** A fence made by stakes with wattles interwoven; a very common fence encountered out hunting, particularly in the shires.
41. **STERN.** The tail of a hound.
42. **TALLY Ho!** The call announcing that the fox has been viewed.
43. **TUFTERS.** The name given to two or three couple of the steadiest and wisest hounds in a pack of stag-hounds. They are used to rouse the harboured stag from his lair and separate him from the herd and drive him into open country before the whole pack is “laid on.” When the tufters have accomplished their task, which is called “tufting,” they are called off to await the arrival of the pack which has been kept kennelled in some local barn during the proceedings.
44. **TURNING HOUNDS.** When the “Whips” gallop round or get to the head of hounds to drive them to the Huntsman from running riot, or from the wrong line.
45. **VIXEN.** The female fox.
46. “**WARE HEEL,**” PRONOUNCED “**WAR HEEL.**” A term used by the Huntsman more generally by the “Whips” to stop hounds running back on the line or scent of the fox.
47. “**WARE WIRE,**” PRONOUNCED “**WAR WIRE.**” The warning shout to indicate the presence of wire. Likewise should you come across a rabbit hole call

out "War hole to the right," or left, according to whichever side it is on, for the benefit of those behind you.

48. **WARRANTABLE.** The red-deer fit to be hunted by reason of its age, five years or more, is said to be warrantable. It is the harbourer's duty to select the animal and mark it down in covert for hunting.
49. "WHO-WHOOP." The Huntsman's cheer announcing the death of the fox.
50. **YOUNG ENTRY.** A term used to describe "young hounds" which have started hunting with the pack of hounds their first season. You say—first season entry, second season entry, etc.

APPENDIX D

THE HUNTING-SEASONS.

FOX-HUNTING.

With the majority of packs from November 1st to the end of March, some packs hunt to the end of April and a few endeavour to kill a May fox.

CUB-HUNTING.

From August (after the harvest) until the last day of October.

STAG-HUNTING.

Spring Stag-hunting, approximately three weeks at Easter.

Stag-hunting (the Season proper), August Bank Holiday to October 12th.

Hind-hunting, November 10th to March 31st.

In July there are bye meets for about two weeks to teach the "young entry."

APPENDIX E

SOME HINTS FOR HORSEMEN

HOLDING A HORSE WITHOUT A BRIDLE (see Diagram 5, Chapter II).

Grasp the horse's left ear with the right hand, and place the left hand on his muzzle.

In emergency when a horse has got away loose, and you find when you catch him that he has got rid of his bridle, utilise a stirrup-leather and place it round his neck like a halter. The majority of horses will lead properly with something round the neck just behind the ears. Remember a belt will serve the purpose admirably.

FALLEN HORSE.

Should a horse fall down on a tarmac road or a slippery surface, kneel or sit on his head to prevent him banging it against the ground in his struggles to get up, and to prevent him from getting up until sand or a rug is placed before his fore-feet to give him a foothold.

Horses are very liable to damage themselves in endeavouring to get up by falling back again through lack of foothold.

LEADING REINS (see Diagram 1).

When using a leading rein pass the lead through the nearest ring of the snaffle, and then attach the rein to the ring on the farthest side.

LED HORSES ON THE ROAD.

When riding one horse and leading another, the led horse should always be on the side nearest the hedge or pavement so as to place the ridden horse between him and the traffic. The reason is to prevent the led horse swinging his hind-quarters round into the traffic.

According to the Traffic Act, both sides of the road may be used for the purpose : but the ridden horse should be between the led horse and the traffic.

If the led horse is saddled, always secure the stirrups by running them up the leathers, and then pass the end of the leathers down through the irons to prevent them dangling about.

Throw your stirrups across the saddle when you are leading your horse when out hacking or hunting : a horse



Diagram 1. HOW TO ATTACH A LEADING-REIN TO LEAD ON THE NEAR SIDE. TO LEAD ON THE OFF SIDE, REVERSE METHOD

is liable to catch the cheek-piece of his bit in an iron when throwing back his head owing to the flies, etc. The writer has actually seen a horse get his lower jaw firmly wedged in a stirrup-iron when swinging his head round to “ swab ” a fly, a position from which he was extricated only with great difficulty, breaking a tooth in the process.

JUMPING A BROOK.

Do not choose a place to take off where the ground is “ poached ” from hoof-marks, as the bank may cave in bodily ; select a place near trees or pollarded willows, as their roots give firmness.

JUMPING WIRE.

If you have to jump over barbed wire take off your coat and place it across the strand of wire, so that your horse may see something to jump.

CUTTING BARBED WIRE (see Diagram 2).

Should you have to cut wire with your nippers, which you should always carry in their case strapped on to the off side front arch of your saddle when you are hunting in a country known to be wired, be careful to do so as follows : Cut the strands of wire close to the post standing with your horse on the farther side of the post, away from where the wire is being cut. This will avoid any possibility of

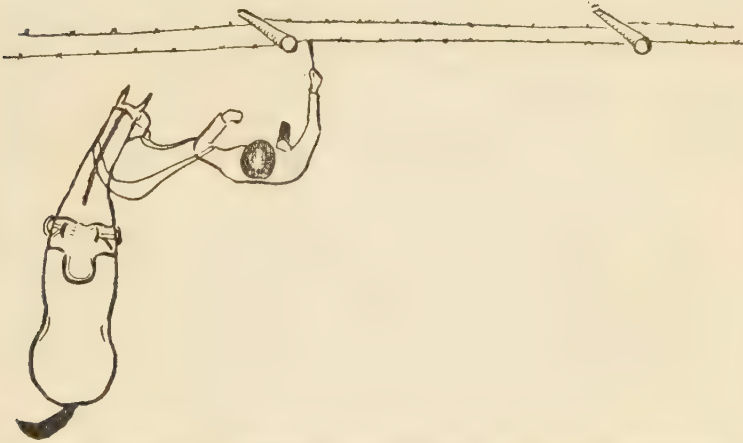


Diagram 2. CUTTING BARBED WIRE AND WHERE TO CUT IT

Note position of man and horse to prevent danger of wire springing back and catching one, as it will do when taut.

loose strands springing back which they very likely will do, particularly if they are anyway taut, and causing damage to your horse or yourself. Then pull back the loose strands as far as they will go, and interlace them in the next uncut strands.

FORDING A RIVER.

When fording a river go quietly and carefully ; never allow the horse to flounder.

HOW TO PICK UP A HORSE'S FOOT.

When you pick up a horse's foot remember to face the rear, and to run the hand lightly down the leg from the shoulder or the hip along the back of the knee or hock downwards, before you attempt to lift the foot off the

ground. The foot when picked up should be held by the hoof and not by the fetlock joint. Horses obviously of nervous disposition will require more stroking on the hip before attempting to lift up a hind foot. This stroking soothes a horse and will give him confidence. A horse's foot should never be picked up suddenly without this preliminary warning.

METHOD OF APPROACHING A HORSE.

When you approach a horse, particularly a strange horse, always hold out the back of your hand towards his muzzle; never hold out an open hand to him unless it contains a tit-bit.

HOW TO RUN A HORSE IN HAND (see Diagram 11, Chapter II).

The reins are brought over the horse's head and held with the right hand, the forefinger separating the reins with the back of the hand up whilst the extremities of the reins are held in the left hand. This method ensures a double hold on the horse, for should he rear up and the grip of the right hand is lost, you still have a hold on the reins in your left hand.

APPENDIX F



MAP SHOWING THE FOX-HUNTS OF ENGLAND, WALES AND SOUTHERN SCOTLAND

The Fife Fox-hunt, whose kennels are at Ceres, Fife, and the Linlithgow and Stirlingshire, whose kennels are at Corstorphine, are not shown.

STAG HOUNDS.—Berks and Bucks, Devon and Somerset, Lunesdale and Oxenholme, Mid Kent, New Forest, Norwich, Quantock, Tiverton.

APPENDIX G



MAP SHOWING THE FOX-HUNTS OF IRELAND

APPENDIX H

ENGLISH, WELSH, SCOTCH AND IRISH HOUNDS WITH KENNELS

STAGHOUNDS—England

NAME OF HUNT

BERKS AND BUCKS FARMERS
DEVON AND SOMERSET
KENT MID
LUNESDALE AND OXENHOLME
NEW FOREST BUCKHOUNDS
NORWICH
QUANTOCK
TIVERTON

KENNELS

Cookham Dean, Berk
Exford, nr. Taunton
Maltman's Hill, Smarden, Kent
Gatebeck, Endmoor, Kendal
Brockenhurst, Hants
Suton, Wymondham, Norwich
Smokeham, Bagborough, Taunton
Duval, Bampton, Devon

Ireland

COUNTY DOWN
WARD UNION

Rockmount, Ballynahinch, Co. Down
Ashbourne, Co. Meath

FOXHOUNDS—England and Wales

AFONWY
ALBRIGHTON
ALBRIGHTON WOODLAND
ASHFORD VALLEY
ATHERSTONE, NORTH
ATHERSTONE, SOUTH
AVON VALE
BADSWORTH
BARLOW
BEAUFORT'S, DUKE OF
BEDALE
BELVOIR (DUKE OF RUTLAND'S)
BERKELEY
BERKELEY, OLD
BERKSHIRE OLD
BERKS, SOUTH
BICESTER AND WARDEN HILL
BILSDALE
BLACKMORE VALE
BLANKNEY
BLENCATHRA
BORDER
BRAES OF DERWENT
BRAMHAM MOOR
BRECON
BROCKLESBY
BURTON
BWLFA
CAMBRIDGESHIRE
CARMARTHENSHIRE
CATTISTOCK
CHESHIRE

Abercaithon, Rhayader, S. Wales
Whiston Cross, Albrighton, Wolverhampton
Hurcott, nr. Kidderminster
Maltman's Hill, Smarden, Kent
Witherley, Atherstone
Cotesbach, Lutterworth, nr. Rugby
Semington, Trowbridge, Wilts
Badsworth, nr. Pontefract
Horsley Gate, Holmesfield, nr. Sheffield
Badminton, Glos
The Kennels, Low Street, Northallerton
Belvoir Castle, Grantham
Berkeley, Glos
Coldmoreham, Amersham
Kingston Bagpuize, Abingdon
Purley, Berks
Stratton Audley, Bicester, Oxon
Spout House, Bilsdale, Stokesley, Yorks
Charlton Horethorne, nr. Sherborne
Blankney, nr. Lincoln
The Riddings, Threlkeld, Keswick
Cold Town, West Woodburn, Northumberland
Tinkler Hill, Shotley Bridge, Durham
Hope Hall, Bramham, Boston Spa, Yorks
Canal Bank, Brecon
Brocklesby Park, Habrough, Linca
Riseholme, Lincoln
Nantmelvn Farm, Aberdare
Caxton, Cambs
Travellers' Rest, Carmarthen
Cattistock, Dorchester
Forest Kennels, Sandiway, Northwich,
Cheshire

CHESHIRE, NORTH
CHESHIRE HUNT FOREST
CHIDDINGFOLD
CLEVELAND
CLIFTON ON TEME
COLLEGE VALLEY
CONISTON
CORNWALL, EAST
CORNWALL, NORTH

White Hall, Little Budworth, nr. Tarporley
Davenham Hall, Northwich
Rickhurst, Dunsfold, Godalming
Tockett's House, Guisborough, Yorks
Shelsley Walsh, nr. Worc
Kilham, Longknowe, Mindrum
Greenbank, Ambleside
Little Gimble, St. Cleer, Liskeard
St. Breward, Bodmin

NAME OF HUNT	KENNELS
COTSWOLD	Andoversford, Glos
COTSWOLD, NORTH	Broadway, Worcestershire
COTTESMORE	Ashwell Road, Oakham, Rutland
COWDRAY	Cowdray Park, Midhurst, Sussex
CrAVEN	Walcot, Kintbury, Hungerford
CRAWLEY AND HORSHAM	West Grinstead, Sussex
CROOME	Kinnersley, Severn Stoke, Worcester
CUMBERLAND	Brayton Park, Aspatria, Carlisle
CUMBERLAND FARMERS	Roe Hill, Dalston, Carlisle
CURRE'S, LADY	Itton Court, Chepstow
DARTMOOR	Ivybridge, S. Devon
DAVID DAVIES, MR.	Plas Dinam, Llandinam, Mont
DERWENT	Snainton, Yorks
DEVON, EAST	Clyst St. Mary, Exeter
DEVON, SOUTH	Pulsford, Denbury, Newton Abbot
DORSET, SOUTH	Bere Regis, Wareham, Dorset
DOWNHAM	Tottenham, King's Lynn
DULVEBTON	(Lord Poltimore's) Court Hall, North Molton, N. Devon; (Mr. E. L. Hancock's) Rhyll East Anstey, Dulverton
DURHAM, NORTH	Shotley Bridge, Durham
DURHAM, SOUTH	Hardwick Kennels, Sedgely
EGGESFORD	Wembworthly, Devon
ELWES'S, COL.	Colesborne, Cheltenham
ERIDGE	The Kennels, Hamsell, nr. Tunbridge Wells
ESKDALE AND ENNERDALE	Brantrake, Eskdale, Cumb
ESSEX	Harlow, Essex
ESSEX, EAST	Earls Colne
ESSEX FARMERS	New Hall, Purleigh, Chelmsford
ESSEX AND SUFFOLK (ESSEX SIDE)	Gt. Bromley, Colchester
ESSEX AND SUFFOLK (SUFFOLK SIDE)	Stratford St. Mary, Colchester
ESSEX UNION	Billericay, Chelmsford
EXMOOR	Oare, Brendon, N. Devon
FARNDALE	Farndale, Kirkby Moorside, Yorks
FERNIE'S	Great Bowden, Market Harborough
FITZWILLIAM (MILTON)	Milton Park, Peterborough
FLINT AND DENBIGH	Cefn, St. Asaph
FOUR BURROW	Scorrier, Cornwall
GARTH	Bracknell, Berks
GLAMORGAN	Cowbridge, Glamorgan
GOATHLAND	Green End, Goathland, Yorks
GOGERDDAN	Gogerddan, Bow Street, Cardiganshire
GRAFTON	Paulerspury, Towcester, Northants
GROVE	Barnby Moor, Retford, Notts
GUESTS', MISS	Inwood, Templecombe, Somerset
HAMBLEDON	Droxford, Hants
"H.H." (HAMPSHIRE)	Ropley, Hants
HARRINGTON'S, EARL OF	Elvaston Castle, Derby
HAYDON	Chesterwood, Haydon Bridge-on-Tyne
HEREFORDSHIRE, NORTH	Bodenham, Hereford
HEREFORDSHIRE, SOUTH	Wormelow, Hereford
HERTFORDSHIRE (NORTH PACK)	Houghton Regis, Dunstable, Beds
HERTFORDSHIRE (SOUTH PACK)	Kinsbourne Green, Harpenden, Herts
HEXTHROP	Chipping Norton, Oxon
HOLDERNESS	Etton, Beverley (Wold side)
HOLDERNESS, EAST	Rise Tarn, Hull (Holderness side), E. Yorkshire
HOPE'S, CAPT.	Whitney Court, Whitney, Hereford
HULTON-HARROP'S, MR.	Gatten Lodge, Pontesbury, Salop
HURLSEY	Braishfield, Romsey, Hants
HURWOTH	West Rounton, Northallerton
IRFON AND TOWY	Dinas Farm, Llanwrtyd Wells
ISLE OF WIGHT	Gatcombe, Newport, I.W.
KENT, EAST	Elham, Canterbury
KENT, WEST	The Kennels, Otford, nr. Sevenoaks
LAMERTON	Stowford, Lewdown, N. Devon
LECONFIELD'S, LORD	Petworth, Sussex

NAME OF HUNT

LEDBURY
 LEDBURY, NORTH
 LLANGIBBY
 LUDLOW, NORTH
 LUDLOW, SOUTH
 MELBREAK
 MENDIP
 MEYNELL
 MIDDLETON
 MIDDLETON, EAST
 MILVAIN'S, LT.-COL.
 MONMOUTHSHIRE
 MORPETH
 N.F.H. (NEW FOREST)
 NEWMARKET AND THURLOW
 NORFOLK, WEST
 NORTHUMBERLAND, NORTH
 NOTTS, SOUTH
 OAKLEY
 OXFORDSHIRE, SOUTH
 PANTYSGALLOG
 PEMBROKESHIRE
 PEMBROKESHIRE, SOUTH
 PENTYRCH
 PENYLAN
 PERCY
 PERCY, WEST
 PLAS MACHYNLLETH
 PORTMAN
 PUCKERIDGE
 PYTCHLEY
 PYTCHLEY, WOODLAND
 QUORN
 RADNOR, WEST
 RADNOR AND W. HEREFORD
 RUFFORD
 ST. BUDEAUX
 SEAVINGTON
 SEDBERGH AND LUNESDALE
 SHROPSHIRE, NORTH
 SHROPSHIRE, SOUTH
 SILVERTON
 SINNINGTON
 SMITH BOSANQUET'S, MAJOR
 SOMERSET, WEST
 SOUTHDOWN
 SOUTHWOLD (WED. & SAT. COUNTRY)
 SOUTHWOLD (MON. & THUR. COUNTRY)
 SPENCE-COLBY'S, COL.
 STAFFORDSHIRE, NORTH
 STAFFORDSHIRE, SOUTH
 STAINTONDALE
 STEVENSTONE
 SUFFOLK
 SURREY AND BURSTOW, OLD
 SURREY UNION
 SUSSEX, EAST
 TALLYBONT AND DISTRICT
 TANAT-SIDE
 TAUNTON VALE
 TEDWORTH
 TEDWORTH WOODLAND
 TEME VALLEY
 TETCOTT
 TETCOTT, SOUTH
 TICKHAM
 TIVERTON

KENNELS

Ledbury, Herefordshire
 Suckley, Worcester
 Llangibby, nr. Newport, Mon.
 Downton Hall, Ludlow
 Caynham, Ludlow
 Miller Place, Brackenthwaite, Cockermonth
 Priddy, Wells, Somerset
 Sudbury, Derbyshire
 Birdsall, Malton, Yorkshire
 Birdsall, Malton
 Eglingham Hall, Alnwick
 Llanirhangel, Gobion, nr. Abergavenny
 River Green, Whalton, Morpeth
 Furzy Lawn, Lyndhurst, Hants
 Bradley, Thurlow, Suffolk
 Weasenham, King's Lynn, Norfolk
 Slainsfield, Cornhill-on-Tweed
 Gedling, Notts
 Milton Ernett, Beds
 Stadhampton, Oxford
 Pantysgallog, Sennybridge, Breconshire
 Slade, Haverfordwest
 Saundersfoot, Pembroke
 The Garth, Pentyrch, nr. Cardiff
 Penylan, via Carmarthen
 Alnwick, Northumberland
 Callaley, High Houses, Whittingham
 Llynloedd, Machynlleth
 Bryanston, Blandford, Dorset
 Brent Pelham, Buntingford, Herts
 Brixworth, Northampton
 Brigstock, Kettering
 Barrow-on-Soar, Loughborough
 nr. Knighton, Herefordshire
 Titley, Herefordshire
 Wellow, Newark
 West Whiteleigh, Crownhill, nr. Plymouth
 Hinton St. George, Crewkerne, Som.
 Bainsbank Farm, Kirkby, Lonsdale
 Lee Bridge, Preston Brockhurst, Shrewsbury
 Annscroft, Shrewsbury
 Drews Clieve, Stoke Hill, Exeter
 Kirby Moorside, York
 Broxbornebury, Broxbourne, Herts
 Carhampton, nr. Taunton
 Ringmer, Lewes, Sussex
 Harrington, Spilsby, Lincs
 Belchford, Horncastle
 Donnington Hall, Ledbury
 Hill Choriton, nr. Newcastle, Staffs
 Upper Longdon, Rugeley
 Hayburn Wyke, nr. Scarborough
 Stevenstone, Torrington, N. Devon
 Bury St. Edmunds
 Felbridge, East Grinstead, Sussex
 Oakwood Hill, Ockley, Surrey
 Catsfield, Battle, Sussex
 Bwlch, Breconshire
 Penygarth, Llanfyllin
 Henlade, Taunton
 Tidworth, Hants
 Appleshaw, Andover
 Knighton, Radnorshire
 Weekstone Holsworthy, N. Devon
 Tetcott, Holsworthy, N. Devon
 Wren's Hill, Faversham, Kent
 Hensleigh, Tiverton, Devon

NAME OF HUNT

TOWY
 TREDEGAR'S, VISCOUNT
 TYNEDALE
 TYNE, NORTH
 ULLSWATER
 UNITED
 V.W.H. (CIRENCESTER), EARL BATHURST'S
 V.W.H. (CRICKLADE)
 VINE
 WARWICKSHIRE
 WARWICKSHIRE, NORTH
 WESTERN
 WHADDON CHASE
 WHEATLAND
 WILTON
 WILTS, SOUTH AND WEST
 WORCESTERSHIRE
 WYLYE VALLEY
 WYNN'S, SIR W. W.
 YNYSFOR
 YORK AND AINSTY, NORTH
 YORK AND AINSTY, SOUTH
 ZELTAND

KENNELS

Vrynylan, Nantgaredig, Carmarthen
 Tredegar Park, Newport, Mon
 Stagshaw, Corbridge-on-Tyne
 Chirdon, Bellingham
 Glenridding, Patterdale, Penrith
 Bishops Castle, Salop
 Cirencester Park, Cirencester
 Cricklade, Wilts
 Overton, Hants
 Kineton, Warwickshire
 Kenilworth, Warwickshire
 Madron, Penzance, Cornwall
 Ascott, Wing, Leighton Buzzard
 Wheatland Kennels, Bridgnorth
 Wilton
 Motcombe, Shaftesbury
 Fernhill Heath, Worcester
 Tytherington, nr. Warminster, Wilts
 Wynnstay, Ruabon
 Ynysfor, Penrhyndeudraeth
 Nidd Hall, Harrogate
 Acomb, York
 Aldbro, St. John, Yorks

FOXHOUNDS—Scotland

BERWICKSHIRE
 BUCCLEUCH'S, DUKE OF
 DUMFRIESSHIRE
 EGLINTON
 EWES VALLEY
 FIFE
 JED FOREST
 LANARK AND RENFREWSHIRE
 LAUDERDALE
 LIDDESDALE
 LINLITHGOW AND STIRLINGSHIRE

Brieryhill, Duns
 St. Boswells, Roxburghshire
 Glenholm, Lockerbie
 Earlstoun, Kilmarnock
 Burnfoot, Ewes, Langholm
 Harlswynd, Ceres
 The Kennels, Wells, Hawick
 Houston, Renfrewshire
 Kennels, Lauder
 Riccarton, Newcastleton, Carlisle
 Golfhall, Corstorphine, Midlothian

Ireland

ALEXANDER'S MR. J.
 BALLYMACAD
 BREE
 CARBERY
 CARLOW
 COOLLATTIN
 DUHALLOW
 GALWAY, COUNTY (THE BLAZER'S)
 GALWAY, EAST
 ISLAND
 KILDARE
 KILKENNY
 CO. LIMERICK
 LOUTH
 MEATH
 MOUNT UNIACKE
 MUSKERRY
 NENAGH
 ORMOND (AND KING'S COUNTY)
 QUEEN'S COUNTY
 SCARTEEN ("THE BLACK AND TANS")
 SOUTH UNION
 THURLES AND KILSHANE
 TIPPERARY
 UNITED
 WATERFORD
 WATERFORD, WEST
 WESTMEATH
 WEXFORD

Carlow
 Grennan, Dromore, Oldcastle
 Rosdrait House, Enniscorthy, Co. Wexford
 Old Military Barracks, Bandon
 Moyle, Carlow
 Coollattin, Shillelagh
 Blackrock, Mallow, Co. Cork
 Craughwell, Co. Galway
 Lismany, Ballinasloe
 Rockmount, Ferns, Co. Wexford
 Jigginstown, Naas
 Mount Juliet, Thomastown, Co. Kilkenny
 Clonsaire, Adare, Co. Limerick
 Lissrenney, Ardee, Co. Louth
 Nugentstown, Kells, Co. Meath
 Ballinahilla, Killeagh, Co. Cork
 Forest, Coachford, Co. Cork
 Youghal Lodge, Nenagh
 Corolanty, Shinrone, King's Co.
 Moyne, Durrow, Queen's Co.
 Scarteen, Knocklong, Co. Limerick
 Kilnagleary, Carrigaline
 Holycross Thurles, Co. Tipperary
 Tullamaine, Fethard, Co. Tipperary
 Knockgriffen, Middleton, Co. Cork
 Seafeld, Bonmahon, Co. Waterford
 Dramana, Cappoquin
 Culleen, Mullingar
 Horetown, Foulksmills, Co. Wexford

INDEX

A

Action, good, importance of, 36

Age :

horses, indication by teeth, 270

children to learn, 244

for side-saddle, 135

Aids :

aid areas, 97 *et seq.*, 158

application of, 95 *et seq.*, 114 *et seq.*

artificial, 116

definition of term, 257

jumping, use of, when, 158

natural, 115

reining back, use of, 110, 236

over-accentuation of, effect, 129

opening gates, use of, 114

Ailments, 27, 34, 181 *et seq.*

Appliances, stable, 190

Arab horse, 30

Army :

reversible bit, 202

method of teaching jumping, 264

remount dépôts, 133

Awkward horses, riding of, by novice, 22, 127, 128, 226

B

"Babbler," a, definition of term, 272

Back :

sore, 134

broad, bad feature for children's ponies, 244 *et seq.*

short, a good feature in conformation, 30

"Roach back," 30, 266

tendons, 187

Balance :

good, importance of, 28, 62, 129, 214

definition of term, 257

strap, side-saddle, 216

rider's balance, 68

Banbury bit, 198

Bandages :

stable, 189, 191

exercise, 188

how to apply, 187 *et seq.*

cotton-wool, use of, in bandaging, 187, 191

wearing of, inadvisable when hunting, 187

tail, use of, 187, 190

Barbed wire :

danger of, 237

how to cut, 281

nippers, how to carry, 281

- Bars of mouth :
 position of, 193
 effect of bit on, 199
 injuries to, 193
 Bayardo, the race-horse, 31
 Bedding, various materials,
 177
 Bit :
 action of, 92 *et seq.*, 195
 Banbury, 198
 Borwick, 201
 care of, prevention of rust,
 217
 correct position in horse's
 mouth, 198
 curb, action of, 46, 93, 195
 fitting, 194 *et seq.*
 gag, 202
 half - moon Pelham, 199,
 201
 half-moon snaffle, 197
 injuries from, 193 *et seq.*
 Lancer, IX, 202
 method of prevention of
 getting tongue over, 199
 et seq.
 Pelham, 199
 reversible army, 202
 Rugby Pelham, 202
 severity of, 93, 198
 snaffle, 195 *et seq.*
 twisted snaffle, 196
 various kinds of, 195-202
 Ward Union, 198
 Weymouth, 198
 Bishoping, 257
 Body brush, 258
 method of use in grooming,
 178, 180
 Boiled linseed, feeding, details
 of, 174
 Boots :
 ankle for riding to be cut for
 leggings, 240, 254
 brushing, 258
 method of lacing, 240
 hunting, 230
 riding, 240, 253 *et seq.*
 Boring, 258
 Borwick bit, 202
 Bowed tendon, 35, 39
 " Bowler " hat, 227, 240, 250
 Bran mash :
 feeding, 174
 preparation of, 173
 Bransham Moor Hunt, 134
 Breastplate, use of, 258
 Breeches, riding, material and
 cut, 229-230
 Bridle, 198
 adjustment of, 45
 cleaning and care of, 217
 how to put on, 43 *et seq.*
 parts of, 41 *et seq.*
 snaffle, 43, 214, 225
 Bridoon, 41, 83, 198, 225
 Broken wind, 258
 Brood mares, avoid out hunt-
 ing, 235
 Brow band, 41, 43, 197, 226
 coloured, incorrect, 207, 226
 Brown Jack, race-horse, 31
 Brushing, boots to prevent,
 258
 Yorkshire boot, 258 *et seq.*
 Brushes :
 body, 178, 258
 dandy, 178, 261

Bullfinch, fence description of,
273
Burnisher, description and use
of, 217, 259

C

Calf-knees, 31
Calf-legs, 259
Calkins, 259
Canes, riding, 240
Cannon bone, length of, 31
Canter, 104, 184
 "collected" description of,
 105
 rider's seat at, 106, 144
Cantering lesson, first, 106
 "disunited" definition of,
 122, 123, 259
 "false" definition of, 124,
 259
 "true" definition of, 122,
 123, 260
Cantle of saddle, 71
"Cap," the," have ready for
 Hunt Secretary, 236, 272
Carrots, feeding, use of, 174
Cast, a, definition of term, 272
Cavalry, method of wearing
 puttees, 229, 241
Cavalrymen's, ex-, Association
 for grooms, 190
Cavesson, for horse training,
 260
 noseband, 213
 adjustment of, 45, 204
 attaching longeing rein to,
 76
 use of, for "yawing," 268
Chaff, feeding, 175

Chaff-cutter, 190
Check, a, definition of term,
 237, 273
Children :
 riding for, 242 *et seq.*
 choice of pony, 244 *et seq.*
 clothes for riding, 253 *et seq.*
 creating spirit of horseman-
 ship, 248
 jumping lessons, 252
 riding lessons, 250
 selection of saddlery, 248
 stirrup irons, care in fitting,
 249
 leading rein, use of in teach-
 ing, 251
Chin-groove, 26, 46, 84, 222
"Chopped," term in fox hunt-
 ing, 273
Circling, 127
Cleaning "tack", instructions
 for, 216 *et seq.*, 249
Clipping, 182 *et seq.*
Clothes :
 riding and hunting, 227, 239
 for children, 253
Clothing, horses, 182 *et seq.*
Club, The Pony, object and
 advantages of, 255 *et seq.*
Colds, precautions against in
 stables, 169
Colic, 177
"Collected," definition of
 term, 62, 98, 184, 260
Coloured brow band, incorrect
 for use, 207, 213
Colours, horses, descriptions
 of, 269
Colt, definition of term, 270

Comb, mane or tail, use of in grooming, 179
 Conformation, points in good, 25 *et seq.*
 Corn :
 feeding use of, 172
 allowance for horse, 172 *et seq.*
 allowance for pony, 246
 Couple, A, 273
 Cow-hocks, 32, 33, 260
 Cracked heels, cause of and prevention of, 181
 Cradle, use of in stables, 26
 "Crop," 232
 Crops, avoid out hunting, 236
 Croup, 26, 55, 113
 "Crosbie," the, ground manger, 177
 Crown-piece of bridle, 41, 42, 43, 197
 Crupper, use of, 244, 260
 Curbs, 31, 182
 Curb chain, adjustment and action of, 42, 46, 148, 195, 200, 222
 Curry comb, use of in grooming, 178, 261
 Cub-hunting :
 advantage of, for novice, 38, 221, 235
 description of, 273
 season for, 278
 Cutting barbed wire, precautions in, 281

D

Dandy brush, use of in grooming, 178, 261

Dartmoor pony, suitability for child, 246
 Dealers, 23 *et seq.*
 Depth of girth, importance of, in conformation, 29
 Devon and Somerset Stag-hounds, 134
 Direct rein, 100 *et seq.*
 Dishing, 36, 261
 Dismounting, 55 *et seq.*
 "Disunited" at the canter, 122 *et seq.*
 definition of, 259
 Docked, 261
 Double bank, 273
 Drag, a, 273
 Draw, the, term in hunting, 273
 Draughts, prevention of, in stables, 169 *et seq.*
 Drying, a sweating or wet horse, 181, 191
 carefully of legs, 181
 Dublin, Royal Horse Show, 132

E

Ears :
 good shape, 25
 lop, 25
 "stripping the ears," term in grooming, 191
 Earth-stopper, duties of, 274
 Elastic contact, "hands," 91, 94
 Elbow capped, 27
 Elbows, rider's, position of, 61, 80, 90, 106
 Epsom salts, 174

- Equitation, 164
 best method of teaching,
 129, 164
 riders' standard in, 222
 "Equine tact," 131
 Etiquette, hunting field, 24,
 221
 Ewe-neck, 28, 29, 261
 Exercise for horses, amount
 of, 184
 Exercises, riders, for suppling
 body, 113
 Ex-Cavalrymen's Association
 for supply of grooms, 190
 Exmoor pony, suitability for
 child, 246
 Eyes :
 importance of good, sound-
 ness, 25, 38, 266
 indication of character of
 horse, 25
 "pig," 25
- F
- Falls, 112, 141, 165, 212, 250
 "False feed," 175
 "cantering false" term, 259
 Farmers :
 consideration for, out hunt-
 ing, 234 *et seq.*
 compensation for damage,
 236
 Favours a leg, term, 36, 182
 Feather, definition of term, 261
 Feeding :
 bran, 173 *et seq.*
 chaff, 175
 carrots, 174, 175
 crushed oats, 172 *et seq.*
 boiled linseed, 174
 distribution of feeds, 171
 hay, 173
 method of, 175 *et seq.*
 mangers, 176
 Mounted Police, method of,
 177
 mistake to groom when, 172
 nets, hay, 175
 quietness in stable essential
 when, 172
 salt, rock and Epsom, 174,
 175
 variety in, 175
 watering before feeding,
 170 *et seq.*
 water in stable, considera-
 tion for, 170
 Feet, ailments in, 35 *et seq.*,
 182, 185
 care of, details of in groom-
 ing, 178, 180, 184
 farriers, 184, 238
 hoof pick, use of in groom-
 ing, 178, 180, 263
 removal of shoes for
 "roughing up," 192
 riders, correct position of,
 62 *et seq.*
 washing of, 181
 wounds in, 182
 Fences, jumping of, 148 *et seq.*,
 236, 238
 Fiddle headed, term, 261
 Field, *The*, newspaper, 190
 Field, hunting, 21
 clothes for, 227 *et seq.*
 gates, shutting of, in, 234,
 235

- consideration for farmers in,
 235
 horse's behaviour in, 22, 38,
 234
 manners in, 22, 235
 Flask, hunting :
 method of attachment to
 saddle, 226
 method of attachment to
 side-saddle, 226
 Flexions, the, 124
 direct, 125
 lateral, 125
 Forehand, points in good, 26,
 28 *et seq.*, 262
 Forelock, 262
 Fording river, 281
 Forging, 262
 Fox-hunting :
 care of horse after, 191
 charge for horse, day's hunt-
 ing, 222
 future of, 256
 saddlery inspection of for,
 222
 season for, 278
 subscriptions, 236
 terms in, 272 *et seq.*
 turn out for, 227 *et seq.*
 Fresh air, necessity for, in
 stables, 168 *et seq.*
 Frog :
 care of, 179, 263
 description of, 262
 diagram of, 185
 healthy state necessary,
 36
 pressure, frog-, 185, 262
 thrush in, 27, 36, 182
- G**
- Gag snaffle, description of, and
 use, 202
 Gaiters, 240
 Galls, girth and saddle, 183, 212
 Gallop, 106 *et seq.*
 Galloping, 106 *et seq.*
 Galvayne groove, description
 of, 262
 Garters, boot, adjustment of,
 230
 Gaskins, position of, and
 points in, 26, 32
 Gates :
 horse's manners at, 114, 234
 training horse at opening,
 234
 shutting of and opening of,
 234
 how to hold whip when
 opening, 234
 Gelding, definition of term, 270
 Girth :
 adjustment of, 47, 211
 care of, to prevent galls, 212
 cleaning of, 217, 218
 description of, 211
 fitting of, 211
 galls, causes of, 212
 horse's reaction to tighten-
 ing of, 49, 223
 how to tighten, when
 mounted, 72
 directions for tightening, 47,
 212
 slackening of, on return
 from hunting, 191, 237
 testing, precaution before
 mounting, 49, 223

side-saddle, adjustment of,
216
various patterns of, 211
Gloves, wearing of, 232, 254
Goose-rumped :
definition of term, 262
described in conformation,
30
Grass, feeding, details of, 175
Grazing and grass, 175, 225,
234, 246
Grease, ailment, 181
Greyhound, when horse's con-
formation likened to, 29
Grip :
automatic application of, by
good horseman, 68
riders, necessity to, 68
strengthening rider's
muscles to, 75, 113
position of knees for, 64, 74,
159
testing rider's, 74
jumping necessity for knee,
148 *et seq.*
fostering grip by good
position, 74
teaching the knee grip, 74
Grooming, 178 *et seq.*
care of the feet, details in, 181
directions in, 178
method of, 178, 180
times for, 178
time taken, 178
tools, used in, 178 *et seq.*
wrong when horse is feeding,
172
wiping, 179, 181
use of hoof pick in, 179

H

Habits, 134
Hacks, 114, 266
Hacking, 224, 239
Half-moon Pelham, 199, 201
Snaffle, 197
Hand, a, definition of in
measurement, 262
Hands :
good, meaning of riders, 89,
128
stable, 190
teaching of, 90
position of, 78 *et seq.*
heavy hands, reaction on
horse's mouth, 128
side-saddle, effect of on, 131
Handiness in horses, 134, 234
Haute École, 263
Hay nets :
use of in feeding, 175
precautions with regard to
use of, 175
Head-stall, 76, 179, 263
coloured brow-band with,
226
Head, good, points in, 25
Heat in leg, 181 *et seq.*
Heels, cracked :
ailment, 181
precaution against, 181
Heels, correct position of,
when riding, 66, 75, 103
Heel :
side-saddle position of, 137
method of teaching position
of, 75, 76
wearing of spurs on, 231
Herring-gutted, 29, 263

- Hind-hunting, season for, 278
 Hireling, 225, 238
 Hints for instructors, 57, 72, 90, 111, 127, 142, 162, 250
 Hobday, Sir Frederick, 9, 263
 "Hobdayed," 263
 Hocks :
 good, 32
 curby, 31
 sickle, 31 *et seq.*
 cow, 31 *et seq.*
 Holding a horse, method of,
 without a bridle, 45, 279
 Holding the reins :
 method of, with double
 bridle, 50 *et seq.*, 82 *et seq.*
 method of, with snaffle, 82
 et seq., 84
 Hoofs :
 Method of picking up, 281
 hoof pick, how to use, 179
 Horse :
 awkward, riding of, by
 novice, 22, 127, 226
 care of, in stables, 168 *et seq.*
 care of, after hunting, 191
 condition of, 172
 feeding of, 171 *et seq.*
 leading, 58, 279
 Points of the, 25
 riding school, 59, 112
 temperament of, 22, 172
 exercising the, 184
 summering the, 192
 "Nappy," 24, 89, 117, 265
 management of, 168 *et seq.*
 watering of, 170
Horse and Hound, newspaper,
 190
- Horse, The*, quarterly maga-
 zine, 241
 Horse, Institute of the, 241
 Hounds :
 effect on horses, 22, 220
 science of hound work, 221
 Hunt, subscription to, 236, 272
 Hunters, management of, 191
 Hunting :
 the seasons for, 278
 care of horse after, 191
 maps, 224
 rider's turnout, 227 *et seq.*
 whips, 232 *et seq.*
 Hunting-field, Ireland, 225
 etiquette, 22, 235, 256
 fractious horse in, 22, 38
 opening and shutting gates
 in, 234, 235
 jumping unnecessarily, 236
 Huntsman, 276, 277
- I
- Imber Court, method of feed-
 ing horses at, 177
 Indian horseman, method of
 dealing with horses, 131
 Injuries :
 bit, 193 *et seq.*
 effect on horse's mouth, 128
 Independent seat, 68, 86
 Indirect rein, 101
 Institute of the Horse, 241
 Instruction, method of giving,
 59, 74
 Instructors, experience of, 73,
 74, 162, 165, 250
 general, 73

patience, 73, 90
 consideration for pupil, 48,
 73 *et seq.*, 76, 165
 in leading horse, 58, 251
 Iodine, tincture of, use of for
 first-aid out hunting, 226
 Ireland "jumper's bump," 30
 Irish horses, 30
 martingale, use and adjust-
 ment of, 207 *et seq.*
 Ireland, 208, 225

J

Jacket, rider's, 228
 Jennet, definition of term, 271
 Jointed snaffle, action of, 196
 Jobbing horse's mouth, 92,
 128, 150
 Jodhpores, wearing of, 230,
 253, 254
 Jumping, lessons, 145 *et seq.*,
 167
 without stirrups, 162
 position of rider, 150
 rider's seat when, 148 *et seq.*
 object of, 146

K

Kennel-huntsman, duties of,
 276
 Kennels, 283 *et seq.*
 Kicks, danger of, in stable,
 169
 Kickers, precaution in hunting
 field, 236
 Kindness to horses, 116, 117,
 191, 237 *et seq.*

Knee caps, 190
 Knees :
 rider's, position of, 64, 74
 grip, importance of, 61, 68
 teaching the knee grip, 74
 Kineton noseband, 203

L

Ladies :
 measuring for side-saddle,
 215
 habits, 134
 advantage of side-saddle,
 130 *et seq.*
 effect on horses, 89, 131
 light "hands," 89, 131
 mounting side-saddle, 142
 Lameness :
 indication of, 182
 how to detect, 182
 causes, 182
 Laminitis, 182
 Lancer, 9th, bit, 202
 Lane, the, system of teaching
 jumping, 167, 264
 Leading horses, 58
 mounted, 279
 running in hand, 279
 rule of road, 279
 Leather, cleaning and "feed-
 ing," 216 *et seq.*
 Leathers, stirrup, adjusting
 when mounted, 70 *et seq.*
 guide for adjusting when
 dismounted, 70
 care of, 212
 rule for measuring length
 of, 71

Legs :

- application of leg "aids," explanation of, 97, 100 *et seq.*
- use of, when riding, 95
- side-saddle leg "aid," 137
- position of, 75, 137

Lessons, riding, 250

- method of conducting, 73
- adults, 73 *et seq.*
- children, 250

Ligaments, 33

Linseed :

- boiled, 174
- details of feeding, 174

Longeing, adjusting longeing rein, 76

Loose horse, 45, 279

- method of holding, 45, 279

Loose-box, advantage of, in stabling, 169

Loose seat, 128

Loose rein riding, 112

- when jumping, 162

M

Magill, Captain W. D., 9

Map, hunting, importance of, 224

Mask, 274

Mare, 270

Manège, 91, 112, 147, 264

Mangers, 168

- ground-level, for feeding, 176 *et seq.*

Management, stable, 168 *et seq.*

Manners, hunting-field, 22, 235

Martingales, 203

- Irish, use of, 203, 207, 265

running, use of and fitting, 203 *et seq.*, 264

standing, use of and fitting, 203, 204, 264

adjustment of, 204 *et seq.*, 225

Master of Fox-hounds, M.F.H., 22, 232, 235, 275

Mosley Leigh, Colonel O., 9

Mounted Police, method of feeding horses, 177

Mounting :

- how to mount, 48 *et seq.*

- how to hold reins, 50

- method of, in racing stables, 54

- position of rider when, 51

- without stirrups, 54

Mouth, horse's, consideration for, 89, 128, 131, 154

Mouth-piece, sliding, 198

- port, description and action of, 199

- consideration for horses with regard to, 199, 201

- rubber, 202

- vulcanite, 199

- jointed, nut-cracker action of, 197

- half-moon, 197, 199

Mule, definition of term, 271

Mute, hounds, running, term, 275

Muzzle, 44, 200

N

Nails :

- picked up in feet, precautions, 182

shoeing, "clenching" of
the, 185
"Nappy" horses, 24, 84, 89,
117, 265
Navicular disease, 182
indication of, 182
Near-side, definition of term,
265
Neck-strap, use of, in jumping,
156, 249
New Forest pony, 246
Newspaper, use of, for instruc-
tion in "hands," 91
Nose-band :
Cavesson, 213
Kinton, 203
fitting of, 45, 204
used for standing martin-
gale, 204
Numnahs, use of, 213

O

Oats :
feeding, 172 *et seq.*
crushed, 172 *et seq.*
Oat straw, 177
Olympia Horse Show, side-
saddle, rules regarding, 132
Over-reach, prevention of, 265
Over-bent, definition of term,
265
Oxer, 274

P

Pair, suspicious sign when feet
are not a, 35
Passage, the :
application of aids for, 126
et seq.

importance of, 125
instructions in, 126
use of, 126, 265
Pasterns, good points in, 34
Peat moss, bedding, pre-
cautions to be taken with,
177
Pedigree, 270
Pelham bit, 59, 199
Panel, saddle, 212
Pillar chains, use of, in stable,
with side-saddle, 217
Point, a, definition of hunting
term, 275
"Pointing," indication of
lameness, 35
Points of the horse, 25 *et seq.*
Polo, necessity for use of
indirect rein, 97, 208
Poll, 26
Pommel, side-saddle, 137 *et seq.*
"leaping," 137
grip with, 137 *et seq.*
Pony :
child's, selection of, 244
et seq.
Dartmoor, 246
Connemara, 223
Exmoor, 246
management of, 246, 248
manners, 248
mouth, reaction of had
mouth on child's "hands,"
246
New Forest, 246
paddock for, 246
points of, 244
care in selection of saddlery
for, 248

Pony Club, The, 255
 Port of bit, description of, and
 its action, 198, 199, 266
 Princess Royal, the, 134
 Pulling horse, 128
 Punishment, 117
 Pulling tails, 187
 Puttees, wearing of, by cavalry
 method, 241
 Pytchley Hunt, 134, 275

Q

Quietness :
 manner of instructor,
 feature, 73
 in stables when feeding, 172
 Quitting stirrup-irons, 75, 162
 Quality of feed, 171 *et seq.*
 Quantity of feed, 171 *et seq.*

R

Rate to, expression in fox-
 hunting, 275
 "Rat-catcher," in, 227
 Rearing, 57
 from severity and misuse of
 bit, 89
 Rein, leading, 251, 280
 Reins :
 action of, 83 *et seq.*
 cleaning of, 216
 holding of, various methods,
 82, 87
 length of, 87
 running martingale, adjust-
 ment on to, 205

 shortening of, 80
 Reining back, 236
 application of "aids" in,
 236
 Restive horse, 128
 Richmond, Horse Show, 132
 Riding lessons, 250
 how to conduct, 73, 112
 principles in giving, 59
 horses for, 59, 111, 128
 Riding over fences, 145
 on curb or bit rein, 83
 side saddle, 130 *et seq.*
 Riding school, 59, 73, 167
 Right leg, 137
 position of side-saddle, 137
 et seq.
 "Riot, running," hunting
 term, 275
 Rising and off, 266
 Roach-back, 210, 266
 Roaring, 266
 "Roughing up," 192, 266
 Rollers, dispensing with, 183
 Rotten Row, 239
 origin of name, 239 *et seq.*
 riders turn out in, 239
 et seq.
 Running in hand, 282
 "riot," 275
 "mute," 275
 Running martingales, 225
 Rust, prevention of, 217

S

Saddle :
 care of, 216, 217
 description, 71

- fitting, 209 *et seq.*
- galls, 211
- selection of side-saddle, 215
- selection of children's saddle, 248
- soap, use of, 216
- room, considerations for, 218
- Saddling a horse, 40 *et seq.*
- instruction in, for pupil, 40 *et seq.*
- Salt, rock, Epsom and common, 174, 175
- Sand-crack, 36
- Sandwich case, 226
- Sand, silver, use of, for cleaning bits, 217
- Sawdust as bedding, 177
- Seat :
 - rider's, correct position of, 61 *et seq.*
 - importance of having firm, 60 *et seq.*, 68
 - effect on horse's mouth, 86, 150
 - teaching pupils the, 74
 - "independent seat," 68
 - rider's, when jumping, 148
 - side-saddle, 132, 136
- Secretary of Hunt, 236, 276
- Selection of horse, 21 *et seq.*
- child's pony, 244 *et seq.*
- Sheepskin, use of, 212, 213, 249
- Shoeing for over-reach, 185 *et seq.*
- Shoes :
 - rate of wear, 186
 - removal of, when on grass, 192
- Shying, 37, 248
- Sickle-hocks, 31 *et seq.*
- Side-saddle :
 - selection of, 215
 - maker of, 215
 - rider's seat, 130 *et seq.*
 - advantages of, 130 *et seq.*
 - instruction in, 133
 - skill, 132, 140
 - "leaping" pommel, loss of, 140
- Snaffle bit, 195 *et seq.*
- Sore backs, prevention of, 133, 183, 209, 223
- Soap, saddle, how to apply, 216
- "Skip," use of, 266
- Splints, 33 *et seq.*
- Sprains, 33
- Sponge, use of, in grooming, 179
- Spavin, bog, position of, 27
- bone, position of, 37
- Spurs :
 - directions for wearing, 231
 - disadvantages of, 231
 - use of, 115, 117, 231
 - Prince of Wales's pattern, 232
- Stable :
 - hands, 190
 - management, 168 *et seq.*
 - grooming, 178 *et seq.*
 - feeding, 171 *et seq.*
 - watering, 170
 - routine in, 178
 - stalls, disadvantage of, 169
 - appliances for, 190
 - loose boxes, advantage of, 169
 - ventilation in, 168

- horses in, care of, 168 *et seq.*
 bandages for, 187 *et seq.*
 quietness in, necessity for, 172
 position of, 168
 light in, 169
 ventilation, considerations, 168
 draughts in, 169
 Standing martingale, use and fitting of, 203 *et seq.*, 264
 Star, description of mark, 269
 Star-gazer, 29
 Stewart, Lieut.-Colonel, 9
 Stocking, description of, 270
 String-halt, 267
 Straw, bedding down in, 177
 "Strapper," 224
 "Strapping," 180
 Stirrups :
 attachment of, to saddle, 71
 attachment of, to side-saddle, 140 *et seq.*
 fitting of, guide to, 70, 112, 212
 feet, position of, in, 66 *et seq.*
 cleaning of, 217
 leather, description and care of, 212
 led horses, if saddled, securing of, 280
 jumping without, 162
 exercises without, 75
 shortening and lengthening, 70
 small, danger of, 212
 Summering of horses (Roughing up), 192
 Surcingle, 183, 267
 Sweating in stables, care necessary, 182
 "breaking out," 192
 clipping to prevent, 182
- T**
- Tattersall's, 211, 266
 "Tack," definition of term, 267
 Tail :
 Arab, carriage of, 30
 grooming, 179
 bandage for, 187, 190
 pulling of, 187
 docked, 261
 Teaching equitation, 164
 Teeth :
 age judged by, 270
 care of, 186
 veterinary treatment of, 186
 tushes, description of, 267, 270
 Tendons, 33
 Times for watering, 170
 Times for feeding, 171 *et seq.*
 Thong, hunting whip, use of, 232 *et seq.*
 Thrush, ailment, 27, 36, 177, 182
 Traffic, rules for horses and led horses in, 280
 Trees :
 hunting-boots, trees for, 230
 shady, for horse's comfort when on grass, 192
 Tree, points in saddle fitting, 210

spreading of in old saddle,
217, 222
side saddle, care of, 217
Trotting :
when to commence lesson in,
102 *et seq.*
rising at trot, position of
rider, 102
without stirrups, 104
True, cantering, definition of
term, 122, 260
"Tubed," definition of term,
267
"Tufters," stag-hunting term,
276
Turning hounds, description,
276
Turning horse :
application of aids for, 99
et seq.
by direct rein, 99 *et seq.*
by indirect rein, 100 *et seq.*
on the haunches, 102
lessons in, for pupils, 99
et seq., 113
Tushes, description of, 267,
270
as indication for fitting
bridle, 198
Twitch, 267

U

Union, Ward, bit, 198
"Unnerved," definition of, 267
Usage, prevention of rough,
with saddlery, 217
Utensils, grooming, list of,
178

V

Ventilation, importance of, in
stables, 168
Veterinary College, Royal,
London, 9
surgeon, 38, 186
certificate for soundness, 38
et seq., 266
skill, 186
treatment, 186 *et seq.*
teeth, care of, 186
Verges, grass, make use of, 225
Vice in horses :
treatment of, 37, 117, 128
indication of in eyes, etc., 28
"nappy," definition of,
38, 39, 265
trial of horse before pur-
chase to find, 38 *et seq.*

Voice :
rider's, effect of, 116
tone of, in talking to horse,
116
use as an "aid," 115, 116
Vulcanite mouthpiece, 199,
202

W

Wall of hoof, 35
Ward Union bit, 198
Warranty, description of, 266,
270
Washing :
horse's legs not advisable, 181
horse's legs drying after, 181
Water :
purest water only for horses,
170

- quantity, daily for a horse,
170
- "roughed up," access to in
field, 192
- Watering :
after exercise, 170, 191
before feeding, 170
in river, directions for,
171
numbers of times daily,
170
rest and slow work only
after, 171
supply in loose box, con-
siderations for, 170
supply of constant, for pony
on grass, 246
- "Weed," 30
- Weight, rider's, considerations
for, 21, 22, 23
horse up to rider's, 21, 36
- Weymouth bit, 198
- Whanghee, riding cane, 240
- Wheat, straw, old for bedding,
177
- Whip, hunting, 232 *et seq.*
description of, 234
directions for opening gates
with, 234
how to carry, 232
how to use, 234, 235 *et seq.*
when not to use, 112, 165,
235, 240
- Whip, cutting, how to carry,
240
- Whipper-in, duties of, 235, 275
- Wire, barbed, danger and
cutting of, 237, 281
- Wisp, how to make and use
of, 179, 181, 268
- Withers, 25, 26, 29
good, necessity for, in saddle
horse, 29
low, bad fault in children's
ponies, 244
protection of, in saddle-
fitting, 210, 222
- Woodland Pytchley Fox-
hounds, 134
- Wrists, flexibility of, 128, 246
- Y
- "Yawing," definition of term,
268
- "Young entry," definition of
term, 277
- Young horses, subject to girth
galls, 212
- Young horses, gates left open
in hunting field, 235
- Young riders, clothes for, 253
- Yorkshire boot :
for brushing, 258
adjustment of, 259
how to make, 259
use of, 258

